

Chapter 5 Solutions, Susanna Epp Discrete Math 5th Edition

<https://github.com/spamegg1>

July 8, 2023

Contents

1	Exercise Set 5.1	8
1.1	Exercise 1	8
1.2	Exercise 2	8
1.3	Exercise 3	8
1.4	Exercise 4	8
1.5	Exercise 5	8
1.6	Exercise 6	9
1.7	Exercise 7	9
1.8	Exercise 8	9
1.9	Exercise 9	9
1.10	Exercise 10	10
1.11	Exercise 11	10
1.12	Exercise 12	10
1.13	Exercise 13	10
1.14	Exercise 14	10
1.15	Exercise 15	10
1.16	Exercise 16	11
1.17	Exercise 17	11
1.18	Exercise 18	11
	1.18.1 (a)	11
	1.18.2 (b)	11
	1.18.3 (c)	12
	1.18.4 (d)	12
	1.18.5 (e)	12
1.19	Exercise 19	12
1.20	Exercise 20	12
1.21	Exercise 21	12
1.22	Exercise 22	13
1.23	Exercise 23	13
1.24	Exercise 24	13

1.25	Exercise 25	13
1.26	Exercise 26	13
1.27	Exercise 27	13
1.28	Exercise 28	14
1.29	Exercise 29	14
1.30	Exercise 30	14
1.31	Exercise 31	14
1.32	Exercise 32	14
1.33	Exercise 33	15
1.34	Exercise 34	15
1.35	Exercise 35	15
1.36	Exercise 36	15
1.37	Exercise 37	15
1.38	Exercise 38	15
1.39	Exercise 39	16
1.40	Exercise 40	16
1.41	Exercise 41	16
1.42	Exercise 42	16
1.43	Exercise 43	16
1.44	Exercise 44	17
1.45	Exercise 45	17
1.46	Exercise 46	17
1.47	Exercise 47	17
1.48	Exercise 48	17
1.49	Exercise 49	17
1.50	Exercise 50	18
1.51	Exercise 51	18
1.52	Exercise 52	18
1.53	Exercise 53	18
1.54	Exercise 54	18
1.55	Exercise 55	19
1.56	Exercise 56	19
1.57	Exercise 57	19
1.58	Exercise 58	20
1.59	Exercise 59	20
1.60	Exercise 60	20
1.61	Exercise 61	20
1.62	Exercise 62	21
1.63	Exercise 63	21
1.64	Exercise 64	21
1.65	Exercise 65	21
1.66	Exercise 66	21
1.67	Exercise 67	21
1.68	Exercise 68	22
1.69	Exercise 69	22
1.70	Exercise 70	22

1.71	Exercise 71	22
1.72	Exercise 72	22
1.73	Exercise 73	23
1.74	Exercise 74	23
1.75	Exercise 75	23
1.76	Exercise 76	23
1.77	Exercise 77	23
1.77.1	(a)	23
1.77.2	(b)	24
1.77.3	(c)	24
1.78	Exercise 78	24
1.79	Exercise 79	24
1.80	Exercise 80	25
1.80.1	(a)	25
1.80.2	(b)	25
1.81	Exercise 81	26
1.82	Exercise 82	26
1.83	Exercise 83	26
1.84	Exercise 84	26
1.85	Exercise 85	27
1.86	Exercise 86	27
1.87	Exercise 87	27
1.88	Exercise 88	28
1.89	Exercise 89	28
1.90	Exercise 90	28
1.91	Exercise 91	28
2	Exercise Set 5.2	29
2.1	Exercise 1	29
2.1.1	(a)	29
2.1.2	(b)	29
2.2	Exercise 2	30
2.2.1	(a)	30
2.2.2	(b)	30
2.2.3	(c)	30
2.2.4	(d)	30
2.3	Exercise 3	30
2.3.1	(a)	31
2.3.2	(b)	31
2.3.3	(c)	31
2.3.4	(d)	31
2.4	Exercise 4	31
2.4.1	(a)	31
2.4.2	(b)	32
2.4.3	(c)	32
2.4.4	(d)	32

2.5	Exercise 5	32
2.6	Exercise 6	33
2.7	Exercise 7	34
2.8	Exercise 8	35
2.9	Exercise 9	36
2.10	Exercise 10	37
2.11	Exercise 11	38
2.12	Exercise 12	39
2.13	Exercise 13	39
2.14	Exercise 14	41
2.15	Exercise 15	41
2.16	Exercise 16	42
2.17	Exercise 17	43
2.18	Exercise 18	44
2.19	Exercise 19	45
2.20	Exercise 20	46
2.21	Exercise 21	46
2.22	Exercise 22	47
2.22.1	(a)	47
2.22.2	(b)	47
2.23	Exercise 23	47
2.23.1	(a)	47
2.23.2	(b)	47
2.24	Exercise 24	47
2.25	Exercise 25	47
2.25.1	(a)	47
2.25.2	(b)	48
2.25.3	(c)	48
2.26	Exercise 26	48
2.27	Exercise 27	48
2.28	Exercise 28	48
2.29	Exercise 29	48
2.30	Exercise 30	48
2.31	Exercise 31	50
2.32	Exercise 32	51
2.33	Exercise 33	52
2.34	Exercise 34	52
2.35	Exercise 35	53
2.35.1	(a)	53
2.35.2	(b)	53
2.35.3	(c)	53
2.36	Exercise 36	53
2.37	Exercise 37	54
2.38	Exercise 38	54
2.39	Exercise 39	55
2.40	Exercise 40	55

3	Exercise Set 5.3	56
3.1	Exercise 1	56
3.2	Exercise 2	56
3.3	Exercise 3	57
	3.3.1 (a)	57
	3.3.2 (b)	57
3.4	Exercise 4	58
	3.4.1 (a)	58
	3.4.2 (b)	58
	3.4.3 (c)	58
	3.4.4 (d)	58
3.5	Exercise 5	59
	3.5.1 (a)	59
	3.5.2 (b)	59
	3.5.3 (c)	59
	3.5.4 (d)	59
3.6	Exercise 6	59
	3.6.1 (a)	59
	3.6.2 (b)	60
	3.6.3 (c)	60
	3.6.4 (d)	60
3.7	Exercise 7	60
	3.7.1 (a)	60
	3.7.2 (b)	60
	3.7.3 (c)	61
	3.7.4 (d)	61
3.8	Exercise 8	61
3.9	Exercise 9	62
3.10	Exercise 10	62
3.11	Exercise 11	63
3.12	Exercise 12	63
3.13	Exercise 13	64
3.14	Exercise 14	64
3.15	Exercise 15	65
3.16	Exercise 16	66
3.17	Exercise 17	66
3.18	Exercise 18	67
3.19	Exercise 19	67
3.20	Exercise 20	68
3.21	Exercise 21	68
3.22	Exercise 22	69
3.23	Exercise 23	70
	3.23.1 (a)	70
	3.23.2 (b)	70
3.24	Exercise 24	71
3.25	Exercise 25	71

3.26	Exercise 26	72
3.27	Exercise 27	72
3.28	Exercise 28	73
3.29	Exercise 29	74
3.30	Exercise 30	75
3.31	Exercise 31	75
3.32	Exercise 32	76
3.33	Exercise 33	77
3.34	Exercise 34	77
3.34.1	(a)	77
3.34.2	(b)	78
3.35	Exercise 35	78
3.35.1	(a)	78
3.35.2	(b)	79
3.36	Exercise 36	79
3.37	Exercise 37	80
3.38	Exercise 38	81
3.39	Exercise 39	83
3.40	Exercise 40	83
3.40.1	(a)	83
3.40.2	(b)	84
3.41	Exercise 41	87
3.42	Exercise 42	88
3.43	Exercise 43	88
3.43.1	(a)	88
3.43.2	(b)	88
3.43.3	(c)	89
3.44	Exercise 44	89
3.45	Exercise 45	90
3.46	Exercise 46	90
4	Exercise Set 5.4	91
4.1	Exercise 1	91
4.2	Exercise 2	91
4.3	Exercise 3	92
4.4	Exercise 4	92
4.5	Exercise 5	93
4.6	Exercise 6	94
4.7	Exercise 7	95
4.8	Exercise 8	95
4.8.1	(a)	95
4.8.2	(b)	96
4.9	Exercise 9	96
4.10	Exercise 10	97
4.11	Exercise 11	97
4.12	Exercise 12	98

4.13	Exercise 13	100
4.14	Exercise 14	101
4.15	Exercise 15	101
4.16	Exercise 16	102
4.17	Exercise 17	103
4.18	Exercise 18	104
4.19	Exercise 19	104
4.20	Exercise 20	105
4.21	Exercise 21	106
4.22	Exercise 22	106
4.23	Exercise 23	107
4.23.1	(a)	108
4.23.2	(b)	108
4.23.3	(c)	108
4.24	Exercise 24	109
4.24.1	(a)	110
4.24.2	(b)	110
4.24.3	(c)	111
4.25	Exercise 25	111
4.26	Exercise 26	112
4.27	Exercise 27	112
4.28	Exercise 28	113
4.28.1	(a)	113
4.28.2	(b)	113
4.28.3	(c)	113
4.29	Exercise 29	113
4.30	Exercise 30	114
4.31	Exercise 31	114
4.32	Exercise 32	115
4.33	Exercise 33	115
4.34	Exercise 34	116
4.35	Exercise 35	117
4.36	Exercise 36	118
4.37	Exercise 37	118
5	Exercise Set 5.5	119
5.1	Exercise 1	119
5.2	Exercise 2	120
5.3	Exercise 3	120
5.4	Exercise 4	121
5.5	Exercise 5	121
5.6	Exercise 6	122
5.7	Exercise 7	123
5.8	Exercise 8	124
5.9	Exercise 9	124
5.10	Exercise 10	125

5.11	Exercise 11	126
5.11.1	(a)	127
5.11.2	(b)	127
5.12	Exercise 12	128
5.12.1	(a)	128
5.12.2	(b)	129
5.12.3	(c)	129
5.12.4	(d)	129

1 Exercise Set 5.1

Write the first four terms of the sequences defined by the formulas in 1 – 6.

1.1 Exercise 1

$$a_k = \frac{k}{10 + k}, \text{ for every integer } k \geq 1.$$

Proof. $\frac{1}{11}, \frac{2}{12}, \frac{3}{13}, \frac{4}{14}$ □

1.2 Exercise 2

$$b_j = \frac{5 - j}{5 + j}, \text{ for every integer } j \geq 1.$$

Proof. $\frac{4}{6}, \frac{3}{7}, \frac{2}{8}, \frac{1}{9}$ □

1.3 Exercise 3

$$c_i = \frac{(-1)^i}{3^i}, \text{ for every integer } i \geq 0.$$

Proof. $1, -\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{9}, -\frac{1}{27}$ □

1.4 Exercise 4

$$d_m = 1 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^m, \text{ for every integer } m \geq 0.$$

Proof. $2, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{4}, \frac{9}{8}$ □

1.5 Exercise 5

$$e_n = \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor \cdot 2, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 0.$$

Proof. $0, 0, 2, 2$ □

1.6 Exercise 6

$$f_n = \left\lfloor \frac{n}{4} \right\rfloor \cdot 4, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. 0, 0, 0, 4 □

1.7 Exercise 7

Let $a_k = 2k + 1$ and $b_k = (k - 1)^3 + k + 2$ for every integer $k \geq 0$. Show that the first three terms of these sequences are identical but that their fourth terms differ.

Proof. $a_0 = 2(0) + 1 = 1, a_1 = 2(1) + 1 = 3, a_2 = 2(2) + 1 = 5, a_3 = 2(3) + 1 = 7.$

$$b_0 = (0 - 1)^3 + 0 + 2 = 1, b_1 = (1 - 1)^3 + 1 + 2 = 3, b_2 = (2 - 1)^3 + 2 + 2 = 5, b_3 = (3 - 1)^3 + 3 + 2 = 13. \quad \square$$

Compute the first fifteen terms of each of the sequences in 8 and 9, and describe the general behavior of these sequences in words. (a definition of logarithm is given in Section 7.1.)

1.8 Exercise 8

$$g_n = \lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. $g_1 = \lfloor \log_2 1 \rfloor = 0, g_2 = \lfloor \log_2 2 \rfloor = 1, g_3 = \lfloor \log_2 3 \rfloor = 1, g_4 = \lfloor \log_2 4 \rfloor = 2,$

$$g_5 = \lfloor \log_2 5 \rfloor = 2, g_6 = \lfloor \log_2 6 \rfloor = 2, g_7 = \lfloor \log_2 7 \rfloor = 2, g_8 = \lfloor \log_2 8 \rfloor = 3,$$

$$g_9 = \lfloor \log_2 9 \rfloor = 3, g_{10} = \lfloor \log_2 10 \rfloor = 3, g_{11} = \lfloor \log_2 11 \rfloor = 3, g_{12} = \lfloor \log_2 12 \rfloor = 3,$$

$$g_{13} = \lfloor \log_2 13 \rfloor = 3, g_{14} = \lfloor \log_2 14 \rfloor = 3, g_{15} = \lfloor \log_2 15 \rfloor = 3.$$

When n is an integral power of 2, g_n is the exponent of that power. For instance, $8 = 2^3$ and $g_8 = 3$. More generally, if $n = 2^k$, where k is an integer, then $g_n = k$. All terms of the sequence from g_{2^k} up to, but not including, $g_{2^{k+1}}$ have the same value, namely k . For instance, all terms of the sequence from g_8 through g_{15} have the value 3. □

1.9 Exercise 9

$$h_n = n \lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. $h_1 = 1 \lfloor \log_2 1 \rfloor = 0, h_2 = 2 \lfloor \log_2 2 \rfloor = 2, h_3 = 3 \lfloor \log_2 3 \rfloor = 3, h_4 = 4 \lfloor \log_2 4 \rfloor = 8,$

$$h_5 = 5 \lfloor \log_2 5 \rfloor = 10, h_6 = 6 \lfloor \log_2 6 \rfloor = 12, h_7 = 7 \lfloor \log_2 7 \rfloor = 14, h_8 = 8 \lfloor \log_2 8 \rfloor = 24,$$

$$h_9 = 9 \lfloor \log_2 9 \rfloor = 27, h_{10} = 10 \lfloor \log_2 10 \rfloor = 30, h_{11} = 11 \lfloor \log_2 11 \rfloor = 33,$$

$$h_{12} = 12 \lfloor \log_2 12 \rfloor = 36, h_{13} = 13 \lfloor \log_2 13 \rfloor = 39, h_{14} = 14 \lfloor \log_2 14 \rfloor = 42,$$

$$h_{15} = 15 \lfloor \log_2 15 \rfloor = 45. \quad \square$$

Find explicit formulas for sequences of the form a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots with the initial terms given in 10 – 16.

Exercises 10 – 16 have more than one correct answer.

1.10 Exercise 10

$$-1, 1, -1, 1, -1, 1$$

Proof. $a_n = (-1)^n$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$

□

1.11 Exercise 11

$$0, 1, -2, 3, -4, 5$$

Proof. $a_n = (n - 1)(-1)^n$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$

□

1.12 Exercise 12

$$\frac{1}{4}, \frac{2}{9}, \frac{3}{16}, \frac{4}{25}, \frac{5}{36}, \frac{6}{49}$$

Proof. $a_n = \frac{n}{(n + 1)^2}$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$

□

1.13 Exercise 13

$$1 - \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{7}$$

Proof. $a_n = \frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n + 1}$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$

□

1.14 Exercise 14

$$\frac{1}{3}, \frac{4}{9}, \frac{9}{27}, \frac{16}{81}, \frac{25}{243}, \frac{36}{729}$$

Proof. $a_n = \frac{n^2}{3^n}$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$

□

1.15 Exercise 15

$$0, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{2}{3}, -\frac{3}{4}, \frac{4}{5}, -\frac{5}{6}, \frac{6}{7}$$

Proof. $a_n = \frac{n - 1}{n} \cdot (-1)^{n-1}$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$

□

1.16 Exercise 16

3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 96

Proof. $a_n = 3 \cdot 2^{n-1}$, where n is an integer and $n \geq 1$ □

1.17 Exercise 17

Consider the sequence defined by $a_n = \frac{2n + (-1)^n - 1}{4}$ for every integer $n \geq 0$. Find an alternative explicit formula for a_n that uses the floor notation.

Proof. $a_0 = 0, a_1 = 0, a_2 = 1, a_3 = 1, a_4 = 2, a_5 = 2$. It seems to be following the pattern: $a_n = \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor$. Let's try to prove this. When n is even, $n = 2k$ for some integer k , so we have

$$a_n = a_{2k} = \frac{2(2k) + (-1)^{2k} - 1}{4} = \frac{4k + 1 - 1}{4} = \frac{4k}{4} = k = \frac{n}{2} = \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor$$

When n is odd, $n = 2k + 1$ for some integer k , so we have

$$a_n = a_{2k+1} = \frac{2(2k+1) + (-1)^{2k+1} - 1}{4} = \frac{4k + 2 - 1 - 1}{4} = \frac{4k}{4} = k = \frac{n-1}{2} = \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor$$

So $a_n = \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor$ for all $n \geq 0$. □

1.18 Exercise 18

Let $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 3, a_2 = -2, a_3 = 1, a_4 = 0, a_5 = -1$, and $a_6 = -2$. Compute each of the summations and products below.

1.18.1 (a)

$$\sum_{i=0}^6 a_i$$

Proof. $2 + 3 + (-2) + 1 + 0 + (-1) + (-2) = 1$ □

1.18.2 (b)

$$\sum_{i=0}^0 a_i$$

Proof. $a_0 = 2$ □

1.18.3 (c)

$$\sum_{j=1}^3 a_{2j}$$

Proof. $a_2 + a_4 + a_6 = -2 + 0 + (-2) = -4$

□

1.18.4 (d)

$$\prod_{k=0}^6 a_k$$

Proof. $2 \cdot 3 \cdot (-2) \cdot 1 \cdot 0 \cdot (-1) \cdot (-2) = 0$

□

1.18.5 (e)

$$\prod_{k=2}^2 a_k$$

Proof.

□

Compute the summations and products in 19 – 28.

1.19 Exercise 19

$$\sum_{k=1}^5 (k + 1)$$

Proof. $2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 = 20$

□

1.20 Exercise 20

$$\prod_{k=2}^4 k^2$$

Proof. $2^2 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 4^2 = 576$

□

1.21 Exercise 21

$$\sum_{k=1}^3 (k^2 + 1)$$

Proof. $(1^2 + 1) + (2^2 + 1) + (3^2 + 1) = 2 + 5 + 10 = 17$

□

1.22 Exercise 22

$$\prod_{j=0}^4 (-1)^j$$

Proof. $(-1)^0 \cdot (-1)^1 \cdot (-1)^2 \cdot (-1)^3 \cdot (-1)^4 = 1$

□

1.23 Exercise 23

$$\sum_{i=1}^1 i(i+1)$$

Proof. $1(1+1) = 2$

□

1.24 Exercise 24

$$\sum_{j=0}^0 (j+1) \cdot 2^j$$

Proof. $(0+1) \cdot 2^0 = 1$

□

1.25 Exercise 25

$$\prod_{k=2}^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{k}\right)$$

Proof. $(1 - 1/2) = 1/2$

□

1.26 Exercise 26

$$\sum_{k=-1}^1 (k^2 + 3)$$

Proof. $((-1)^2 + 3) + (0^2 + 3) + (1^2 + 3) = 11$

□

1.27 Exercise 27

$$\sum_{n=1}^6 \left(\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n+1} \right)$$

Proof. $\left(\frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{2} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{5} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{7} \right)$
 $= 1 - \frac{1}{7} = \frac{6}{7}$

□

1.28 Exercise 28

$$\prod_{i=2}^5 \frac{i(i+2)}{(i-1) \cdot (i+1)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Proof. } & \frac{2(2+2)}{(2-1)(2+1)} \cdot \frac{3(3+2)}{(3-1)(3+1)} \cdot \frac{4(4+2)}{(4-1)(4+1)} \cdot \frac{5(5+2)}{(5-1)(5+1)} \\ &= \frac{\cancel{8}}{3} \cdot \frac{\cancel{15}}{\cancel{8}} \cdot \frac{\cancel{24}}{\cancel{15}} \cdot \frac{35}{\cancel{24}} = \frac{35}{3} \end{aligned}$$

□

Write the summations in 29 – 32 in expanded form.

1.29 Exercise 29

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (-2)^i$$

$$\text{Proof. } (-2)^1 + (-2)^2 + (-2)^3 + \cdots + (-2)^n = -2 + 2^2 - 2^3 + \cdots + (-1)^n 2^n$$

□

1.30 Exercise 30

$$\sum_{j=1}^n j(j+1)$$

$$\text{Proof. } 1 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 4 + \cdots + n(n+1)$$

□

1.31 Exercise 31

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \frac{1}{k!}$$

$$\text{Proof. } \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \frac{1}{k!} = \frac{1}{0!} + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(n+1)!}$$

□

1.32 Exercise 32

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i(i!)$$

$$\text{Proof. } 1(1!) + 2(2!) + 3(3!) + \cdots + (k+1)(k+1)!$$

□

Evaluate the summations and products in 33 – 36 for the indicated values of the variable.

1.33 Exercise 33

$$\frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^2}; n = 1$$

Proof. $\frac{1}{1^2} = 1$

□

1.34 Exercise 34

$$1(1!) + 2(2!) + 3(3!) + \cdots + m(m!); m = 2$$

Proof. $1(1!) + 2(2!) = 1 + 4 = 5$

□

1.35 Exercise 35

$$\left(\frac{1}{1+1}\right) \left(\frac{2}{2+1}\right) \left(\frac{3}{3+1}\right) \cdots \left(\frac{k}{k+1}\right); k = 3$$

Proof. $\left(\frac{1}{1+1}\right) \left(\frac{2}{2+1}\right) \left(\frac{3}{3+1}\right) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{2}{3} \frac{3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$

□

1.36 Exercise 36

$$\left(\frac{1 \cdot 2}{3 \cdot 4}\right) \left(\frac{2 \cdot 3}{4 \cdot 5}\right) \left(\frac{3 \cdot 4}{5 \cdot 6}\right) \cdots \left(\frac{m \cdot (m+1)}{(m+2) \cdot (m+3)}\right); m = 1$$

Proof. $\frac{1 \cdot 2}{3 \cdot 4} = \frac{3}{8}$

□

Write each of 37 – 39 as a single summation.

1.37 Exercise 37

$$\sum_{i=1}^k i^3 + (k+1)^3$$

Proof. $\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i^3$

□

1.38 Exercise 38

$$\sum_{k=1}^m \frac{k}{k+1} + \frac{m+1}{m+2}$$

Proof. $\sum_{k=1}^{m+1} \frac{k}{k+1}$

□

1.39 Exercise 39

$$\sum_{m=0}^n (m+1)2^n + (n+2)2^{n+1}$$

$$\text{Proof. } \sum_{m=0}^{n+1} (m+1)2^n$$

□

Rewrite 40 – 42 by separating off the final term.

1.40 Exercise 40

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i(i!)$$

$$\text{Proof. } \sum_{i=1}^k i(i!) + (k+1)(k+1)!$$

□

1.41 Exercise 41

$$\sum_{k=1}^{m+1} k^2$$

$$\text{Proof. } \sum_{k=1}^m k^2 + (m+1)^2$$

□

1.42 Exercise 42

$$\sum_{m=1}^{n+1} m(m+1)$$

$$\text{Proof. } \sum_{m=1}^n m(m+1) + (n+1)(n+2)$$

□

Write each of 43 – 52 using summation or product notation.

Exercises 43 – 52 have more than one correct answer.

1.43 Exercise 43

$$1^2 - 2^2 + 3^2 - 4^2 + 5^2 - 6^2 + 7^2$$

$$\text{Proof. } \sum_{k=1}^7 (-1)^{k+1} k^2 \text{ or } \sum_{k=0}^6 (-1)^k (k+1)^2$$

□

1.44 Exercise 44

$$(1^3 - 1) - (2^3 - 1) + (3^3 - 1) - (4^3 - 1) + (5^3 - 1)$$

Proof. $\sum_{k=1}^5 (k^3 - 1)$

□

1.45 Exercise 45

$$(2^2 - 1) \cdot (3^2 - 1) \cdot (4^2 - 1)$$

Proof. $\prod_{k=2}^4 (k^2 - 1)$

□

1.46 Exercise 46

$$\frac{2}{3 \cdot 4} - \frac{3}{4 \cdot 5} + \frac{4}{5 \cdot 6} - \frac{5}{6 \cdot 7} + \frac{6}{7 \cdot 8}$$

Proof. $\sum_{j=2}^6 \frac{(-1)^j j}{(j+1)(j+2)}$

□

1.47 Exercise 47

$$1 - r + r^2 - r^3 + r^4 - r^5$$

Proof. $\sum_{i=0}^5 (-1)^i r^i$

□

1.48 Exercise 48

$$(1 - t) \cdot (1 - t^2) \cdot (1 - t^3) \cdot (1 - t^4)$$

Proof. $\prod_{k=1}^4 (1 - t^k)$

□

1.49 Exercise 49

$$1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \cdots + n^3$$

Proof. $\sum_{k=1}^n k^3$

□

1.50 Exercise 50

$$\frac{1}{2!} + \frac{2}{3!} + \frac{3}{4!} + \cdots + \frac{n}{(n+1)!}$$

Proof. $\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{(k+1)!}$

□

1.51 Exercise 51

$$n + (n-1) + (n-2) + \cdots + 1$$

Proof. $\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (n-i)$

□

1.52 Exercise 52

$$n + \frac{n-1}{2!} + \frac{n-2}{3!} + \frac{n-3}{4!} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n!}$$

Proof. $\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \frac{n-i}{(i+1)!}$

□

Transform each of 53 and 54 by making the change of variable $i = k + 1$.

1.53 Exercise 53

$$\sum_{k=0}^5 k(k-1)$$

Proof. When $k = 0$, we have $i = 0 + 1 = 1$ and when $k = 5$ we have $i = 5 + 1 = 6$. Solving for k we get $k = i - 1$. So

$$\sum_{k=0}^5 k(k-1) = \sum_{i=1}^6 (i-1)(i-2)$$

□

1.54 Exercise 54

$$\prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{k^2 + 4}$$

Proof. When $k = 1$, we have $i = 1 + 1 = 2$ and when $k = n$ we have $i = n + 1$. Solving for k we get $k = i - 1$. So

$$\prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{k^2 + 4} = \prod_{i=2}^{n+1} \frac{i-1}{(i-1)^2 + 4}$$

□

Transform each of 55 – 58 by making the change of variable $j = i - 1$.

1.55 Exercise 55

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \frac{(i-1)^2}{i \cdot n}$$

Proof. When $i = 1$, we have $j = 1 - 1 = 0$ and when $i = n + 1$ we have $j = n + 1 - 1 = n$. Solving for i we get $i = j + 1$. So

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \frac{(i-1)^2}{i \cdot n} = \sum_{j=0}^n \frac{(j+1-1)^2}{(j+1) \cdot n} = \sum_{j=0}^n \frac{j^2}{(j+1) \cdot n}$$

□

1.56 Exercise 56

$$\sum_{i=3}^n \frac{i}{i+n-1}$$

Proof. When $i = 3$, we have $j = 3 - 1 = 2$ and when $i = n$ we have $j = n - 1$. Solving for i we get $i = j + 1$. So

$$\sum_{i=3}^n \frac{i}{i+n-1} = \sum_{j=2}^{n-1} \frac{j+1}{j+1+n-1} = \sum_{j=2}^{n-1} \frac{j+1}{j+n}$$

□

1.57 Exercise 57

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \frac{i}{(n-i)^2}$$

Proof. When $i = 1$, we have $j = 1 - 1 = 0$ and when $i = n - 1$ we have $j = n - 1 - 1 = n - 2$. Solving for i we get $i = j + 1$. So

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \frac{i}{(n-i)^2} = \sum_{j=0}^{n-2} \frac{j+1}{(n-(j+1))^2}$$

□

1.58 Exercise 58

$$\prod_{i=n}^{2n} \frac{n-i+1}{n+i}$$

Proof. When $i = n$, we have $j = n - 1$ and when $i = 2n$ we have $j = 2n - 1$. Solving for i we get $i = j + 1$. So

$$\prod_{i=n}^{2n} \frac{n-i+1}{n+i} = \prod_{j=n-1}^{2n-1} \frac{n-(j+1)+1}{n+j+1} = \prod_{j=n-1}^{2n-1} \frac{n-j}{n+j+1}$$

□

Write each of 59 – 61 as a single summation or product.

1.59 Exercise 59

$$3 \sum_{k=1}^n (2k-3) + \sum_{k=1}^n (4-5k)$$

Proof.
$$\sum_{k=1}^n [3(2k-3) + (4-5k)] = \sum_{k=1}^n [6k-9+4-5k] = \sum_{k=1}^n [k-5]$$

□

1.60 Exercise 60

$$2 \sum_{k=1}^n (3k^2+4) + 5 \sum_{k=1}^n (2k^2-1)$$

Proof.
$$\sum_{k=1}^n [2(3k^2+4) + 5(2k^2-1)] = \sum_{k=1}^n [6k^2+8+10k^2-5] = \sum_{k=1}^n [16k^2+3]$$

□

1.61 Exercise 61

$$\prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{k+1} \prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k+1}{k+2}$$

Proof.
$$\prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{k+1} \prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k+1}{k+2} = \prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{\cancel{k+1}} \frac{\cancel{k+1}}{k+2} = \prod_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{k+2}$$

□

Compute each of 62 – 76. Assume the values of the variables are restricted so that the expressions are defined.

1.62 Exercise 62

$$\frac{4!}{3!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{4 \cdot \cancel{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}}{\cancel{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}} = 4$$

□

1.63 Exercise 63

$$\frac{6!}{8!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{\cancel{6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}}{8 \cdot 7 \cdot \cancel{6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}} = \frac{1}{56}$$

□

1.64 Exercise 64

$$\frac{4!}{0!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{4!}{0!} = \frac{24}{1} = 24$$

□

1.65 Exercise 65

$$\frac{n!}{(n-1)!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{n \cdot \cancel{(n-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}}{\cancel{(n-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}} = n$$

□

1.66 Exercise 66

$$\frac{(n-1)!}{(n+1)!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{\cancel{(n-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}}{(n+1) \cdot n \cdot \cancel{(n-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}} = \frac{1}{(n+1)n}$$

□

1.67 Exercise 67

$$\frac{n!}{(n-2)!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{n \cdot (n-1) \cdot \cancel{(n-2) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}}{\cancel{(n-2) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}} = n(n-1)$$

□

1.68 Exercise 68

$$\frac{((n+1)!)^2}{(n!)^2}$$

$$Proof. = \left(\frac{(n+1)!}{n!} \right)^2 = \left(\frac{(n+1)\cancel{n(n-1)\cdots 2\cdot 1}}{\cancel{n(n-1)\cdots 2\cdot 1}} \right)^2 = (n+1)^2 \quad \square$$

1.69 Exercise 69

$$\frac{n!}{(n-k)!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{n \cdot (n-1) \cdots (n-k+1) \cdot \cancel{(n-k)(n-k-1)\cdots 2\cdot 1}}{\cancel{(n-k)(n-k-1)\cdots 2\cdot 1}} = n(n-1) \cdots (n-k+1) \quad \square$$

1.70 Exercise 70

$$\frac{n!}{(n-k+1)!}$$

$$Proof. \frac{n \cdot (n-1) \cdots (n-k+2) \cdot \cancel{(n-k+1)(n-k)\cdots 2\cdot 1}}{\cancel{(n-k+1)(n-k)\cdots 2\cdot 1}} = n(n-1) \cdots (n-k+2) \quad \square$$

1.71 Exercise 71

$$\binom{5}{3}$$

$$Proof. \binom{5}{3} = \frac{5!}{3!(5-3)!} = \frac{5!}{3! \cdot 2!} = \frac{5 \cdot 4 \cdot \cancel{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}}{\cancel{(3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1)} \cdot (2 \cdot 1)} = 10 \quad \square$$

1.72 Exercise 72

$$\binom{7}{4}$$

$$Proof. \binom{7}{4} = \frac{7!}{4!(7-4)!} = \frac{7!}{4! \cdot 3!} = \frac{7 \cdot \cancel{6} \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot \cancel{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}}{\cancel{(4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1)} \cdot \cancel{(3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1)}} = 35 \quad \square$$

1.73 Exercise 73

$$\binom{3}{0}$$

Proof. 1

□

1.74 Exercise 74

$$\binom{5}{5}$$

Proof. 1

□

1.75 Exercise 75

$$\binom{n}{n-1}$$

Proof. $\binom{n}{n-1} = \frac{n!}{(n-1)!(n-(n-1))!} = \frac{n!}{(n-1)! \cdot 1!} = \frac{n \cdot \cancel{(n-1)} \cdots \cancel{2} \cdot \cancel{1}}{\cancel{(n-1)} \cdots \cancel{2} \cdot \cancel{1}} = n$ □

1.76 Exercise 76

$$\binom{n+1}{n-1}$$

Proof. $\binom{n+1}{n-1} = \frac{(n+1)!}{(n-1)!(n+1-(n-1))!} = \frac{(n+1)!}{(n-1)! \cdot 2!}$
 $= \frac{(n+1) \cdot n \cdot \cancel{(n-1)} \cdots \cancel{2} \cdot \cancel{1}}{\cancel{(n-1)} \cdots \cancel{2} \cdot \cancel{1} \cdot 2} = \frac{(n+1)n}{2}$ □

1.77 Exercise 77

1.77.1 (a)

Prove that $n! + 2$ is divisible by 2, for every integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. Let n be an integer such that $n \geq 2$. By definition of factorial,

$$n! = \begin{cases} 2 \cdot 1 & \text{if } n = 2 \\ 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 & \text{if } n = 3 \\ n \cdot (n-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1 & \text{if } n > 3 \end{cases}$$

In each case, $n!$ has a factor of 2, and so $n! = 2k$ for some integer k . Then $n! + 2 = 2k + 2 = 2(k+1)$. Since $k+1$ is an integer, $n! + 2$ is divisible by 2. □

1.77.2 (b)

Prove that $n! + k$ is divisible by k , for every integer $n \geq 2$ and $k = 2, 3, \dots, n$.

Proof. For every $k = 2, 3, \dots, n$, from the definition of $n!$ in part (a), we can see that $n!$ has a factor of k , so $n! = ka$ for some integer a . Then $n! + k = ka + k = k(a + 1)$ where $a + 1$ is an integer. Therefore $n! + k$ is divisible by k for every $k = 2, 3, \dots, n$. \square

1.77.3 (c)

Given any integer $m \geq 2$, is it possible to find a sequence of $m - 1$ consecutive positive integers none of which is prime? Explain your answer.

Proof. Yes. By part (b), $m! + k$ is divisible by k , for all $k = 2, 3, \dots, m$. So $m! + 2, m! + 3, \dots, m! + m$ are $m - 1$ consecutive integers none of which is prime. \square

1.78 Exercise 78

Prove that for all nonnegative integers n and r with $r + 1 \leq n$, $\binom{n}{r+1} = \frac{n-r}{r+1} \binom{n}{r}$.

Proof. Suppose n and r are nonnegative integers with $r + 1 \leq n$. The right-hand side of the equation to be shown is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{n-r}{r+1} \cdot \binom{n}{r} &= \frac{n-r}{r+1} \cdot \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!} \\ &= \frac{\cancel{n-r}}{r+1} \cdot \frac{n!}{r!(\cancel{n-r})(n-r-1)!} \\ &= \frac{n!}{(r+1)!(n-r-1)!} \\ &= \frac{n!}{(r+1)!(n-(r+1))!} \\ &= \binom{n}{r+1} \end{aligned}$$

which is the left-hand side of the equality to be shown. \square

1.79 Exercise 79

Prove that if p is a prime number and r is an integer with $0 < r < p$, then $\binom{p}{r}$ is divisible by p .

Proof. We know that

$$\binom{p}{r} = \frac{p!}{r!(p-r)!} = \frac{p \cdot (p-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}{[r \cdot (r-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1][(p-r) \cdot (p-r-1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1]}$$

is an integer. Notice that all the factors in the denominator are less than p . So, since p is prime, p is not divisible by any of the factors in the denominator. This means that every factor in the denominator is canceled out by the factors of $(p - 1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1$. Thus

$$M = \frac{(p - 1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1}{[r \cdot (r - 1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1][(p - r) \cdot (p - r - 1) \cdots 2 \cdot 1]}$$

is also an integer (otherwise $p \cdot M$ would not be an integer, since p cannot cancel out anything in the denominator). Therefore $\binom{p}{r} = p \cdot M$ where M is an integer, so it is divisible by p . □

1.80 Exercise 80

Suppose $a[1], a[2], a[3], \dots, a[m]$ is a one-dimensional array and consider the following algorithm segment:

```

sum := 0
for (k := 1 to m)
    sum := sum + a[k]
next k

```

Fill in the blanks below so that each algorithm segment performs the same job as the one shown in the exercise statement.

1.80.1 (a)

```

sum := 0
for (i := 0 to ____ )
    sum := ____
next i

```

Proof. $m - 1, \text{sum} + a[i + 1]$ □

1.80.2 (b)

```

sum := 0
for (j := 2 to ____ )
    sum := ____
next j

```

Proof. $m + 1, \text{sum} + a[j - 1]$ □

Use repeated division by 2 to convert (by hand) the integers in 81 – 83 from base 10 to base 2.

1.81 Exercise 81

90

$$\begin{array}{l} 90 / 2 = 45, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ 45 / 2 = 22, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ 22 / 2 = 11, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \textit{Proof.} \quad 11 / 2 = 5, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ \quad 5 / 2 = 2, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ \quad 2 / 2 = 1, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \quad 1 / 2 = 0, \text{ remainder} = 1 \end{array}$$

So $90_{10} = 1011010_2$. □

1.82 Exercise 82

98

$$\begin{array}{l} 98 / 2 = 49, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ 49 / 2 = 24, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ 24 / 2 = 12, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \textit{Proof.} \quad 12 / 2 = 6, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \quad 6 / 2 = 3, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \quad 3 / 2 = 1, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ \quad 1 / 2 = 0, \text{ remainder} = 1 \end{array}$$

So $98_{10} = 1100010_2$. □

1.83 Exercise 83

205

$$\begin{array}{l} 205 / 2 = 102, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ 102 / 2 = 51, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ 51 / 2 = 25, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ \textit{Proof.} \quad 25 / 2 = 12, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ \quad 12 / 2 = 6, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \quad 6 / 2 = 3, \text{ remainder} = 0 \\ \quad 3 / 2 = 1, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ \quad 1 / 2 = 0, \text{ remainder} = 1 \end{array}$$

So $205_{10} = 11001101_2$. □

Make a trace table to trace the action of algorithm 5.1.1 on the input in 84 – 86.

1.84 Exercise 84

23

Proof.

a	23					
i	0	1	2	3	4	5
q	23	11	5	2	1	0
$r[0]$		1				
$r[1]$			1			
$r[2]$				1		
$r[3]$					0	
$r[4]$						1

□

1.85 Exercise 85

28

Proof.

a	28					
i	0	1	2	3	4	5
q	28	14	7	3	1	0
$r[0]$		0				
$r[1]$			0			
$r[2]$				1		
$r[3]$					1	
$r[4]$						1

□

1.86 Exercise 86

44

Proof.

a	44						
i	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
q	44	22	11	5	2	1	0
$r[0]$		0					
$r[1]$			0				
$r[2]$				1			
$r[3]$					1		
$r[4]$						0	
$r[5]$							1

□

1.87 Exercise 87

Write an informal description of an algorithm (using repeated division by 16) to convert a nonnegative integer from decimal notation to hexadecimal notation (base 16).

Proof. Suppose a is a nonnegative integer. Divide a by 16 using the quotient-remainder theorem to obtain a quotient $q[0]$ and a remainder $r[0]$. If the quotient is nonzero, divide by 16 again to obtain a quotient $q[1]$ and a remainder $r[1]$. Continue this process until a quotient of 0 is obtained. At each stage, the remainder must be less than the divisor, which is 16. Thus each remainder is always among $0, 1, 2, \dots, 15$. Read the divisions from the bottom up. \square

Use the algorithm you developed for exercise 87 to convert the integers in 88 – 90 to hexadecimal notation.

1.88 Exercise 88

287

$$\begin{array}{rcll} & 287 / 16 & = & 17, \text{ remainder} = 15 = \text{F} \\ \textit{Proof.} & 17 / 16 & = & 1, \text{ remainder} = 1 \\ & 1 / 16 & = & 0, \text{ remainder} = 1 \end{array}$$

So $287_{10} = 11\text{F}_{16}$. \square

1.89 Exercise 89

693

$$\begin{array}{rcll} & 693 / 16 & = & 43, \text{ remainder} = 5 \\ \textit{Proof.} & 43 / 16 & = & 2, \text{ remainder} = 11 = \text{B} \\ & 2 / 16 & = & 0, \text{ remainder} = 2 \end{array}$$

So $693_{10} = 2\text{B}5_{16}$. \square

1.90 Exercise 90

2301

$$\begin{array}{rcll} & 2301 / 16 & = & 143, \text{ remainder} = 13 = \text{D} \\ \textit{Proof.} & 143 / 16 & = & 8, \text{ remainder} = 15 = \text{F} \\ & 8 / 16 & = & 0, \text{ remainder} = 8 \end{array}$$

So $2301_{10} = 8\text{F}\text{D}_{16}$. \square

1.91 Exercise 91

Write a formal version of the algorithm you developed for exercise 87.

Proof:

Decimal to Hexadecimal Conversion Using Repeated Division by 16

Input: a [a nonnegative integer]

Algorithm Body:

$q := a, i := 0$

while ($i = 0$ or $q \neq 0$)

$r[i] := q \bmod 16$

$q := q \operatorname{div} 16$

$[r[i]$ and q can be obtained by calling the division algorithm.]

end while

[After execution of this step, the values $r[0], r[1], \dots, r[i-1]$ are all 0's and 1's, and $a = (r[i-1]r[i-2] \dots r[1]r[0])_{16}$.]

Output: $r[0], r[1], \dots, r[i-1]$ [a sequence of integers]

2 Exercise Set 5.2

2.1 Exercise 1

Use the technique illustrated at the beginning of this section to show that the statements in (a) and (b) are true.

2.1.1 (a)

If $\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) = \frac{1}{5}$ then

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) = \frac{1}{6}.$$

Proof. The statement in part (a) is true because if

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) = \frac{1}{5}$$

then

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) = \frac{1}{5} \cdot \frac{5}{6} = \frac{1}{6}.$$

□

2.1.2 (b)

If $\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) = \frac{1}{6}$ then

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{7}\right) = \frac{1}{7}.$$

Proof. The statement in part (a) is true because if

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) = \frac{1}{6}$$

then

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{7}\right) = \frac{1}{6} \cdot \frac{6}{7} = \frac{1}{7}.$$

□

2.2 Exercise 2

For each positive integer n , let $P(n)$ be the formula

$$1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2.$$

2.2.1 (a)

Write $P(1)$. Is $P(1)$ true?

Proof. $P(1)$ is the equation $1 = 1^2$, which is true.

□

2.2.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is the equation $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1) = k^2$.

□

2.2.3 (c)

Write $P(k + 1)$.

Proof. $P(k + 1)$ is the equation $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2(k + 1) - 1) = (k + 1)^2$.

□

2.2.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that the formula holds for every integer $n \geq 1$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. In the inductive step, show that if k is any integer for which $k \geq 1$ and $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1) = k^2$ is true, then $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2(k + 1) - 1) = (k + 1)^2$ is also true.

□

2.3 Exercise 3

For each positive integer n , let $P(n)$ be the formula

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n(n + 1)(2n + 1)}{6}$$

2.3.1 (a)

Write $P(1)$. Is $P(1)$ true?

Proof. $P(1)$ is “ $1^2 = \frac{1(1+1)(2 \cdot 1 + 1)}{6}$.” $P(1)$ is true because the left-hand side equals $1^2 = 1$ and the right-hand side equals $\frac{1(1+1)(2+1)}{6} = \frac{2 \cdot 3}{6} = 1$ also. \square

2.3.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is “ $k^2 = \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6}$.” \square

2.3.3 (c)

Write $P(k+1)$.

Proof. $P(k+1)$ is “ $(k+1)^2 = \frac{(k+1)(k+2)(2k+3)}{6}$.” \square

2.3.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that the formula holds for every integer $n \geq 1$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. In the inductive step, show that if k is any integer for which $k \geq 1$ and $k^2 = \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6}$ is true, then $(k+1)^2 = \frac{(k+1)(k+2)(2k+3)}{6}$ is also true. \square

2.4 Exercise 4

For each integer n with $n \geq 2$, let $P(n)$ be the formula

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} i(i+1) = \frac{n(n-1)(n+1)}{3}$$

2.4.1 (a)

Write $P(2)$. Is $P(2)$ true?

Proof. $P(2)$ is “ $\sum_{i=1}^1 i(i+1) = \frac{2(2-1)(2+1)}{3}$.” It’s true because the left-hand side is $1(1+1) = 2$ and the right-hand side is $\frac{2(1)(3)}{3} = 2$ also. \square

2.4.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is “ $\sum_{i=1}^{k-1} i(i+1) = \frac{k(k-1)(k+1)}{3}$.” □

2.4.3 (c)

Write $P(k+1)$.

Proof. $P(k+1)$ is “ $\sum_{i=1}^k i(i+1) = \frac{(k+1)k(k+2)}{3}$.” □

2.4.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that the formula holds for every integer $n \geq 2$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. In the inductive step, show that if k is any integer for which $k \geq 2$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{k-1} i(i+1) = \frac{k(k-1)(k+1)}{3}$ is true, then $\sum_{i=1}^k i(i+1) = \frac{(k+1)k(k+2)}{3}$ is also true. □

2.5 Exercise 5

Fill in the missing pieces in the following proof that

$$1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2$$

for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof: Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation

$$1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: To establish $P(1)$, we must show that when 1 is substituted in place of n , the left-hand side equals the right-hand side. But when $n = 1$, the left-hand side is the sum of all the odd integers from 1 to $2 \cdot 1 - 1$, which is the sum of the odd integers from 1 to 1 and is just 1. The right-hand side is (a) _____, which also equals 1. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true: Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$.

[Suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is:] Suppose

$$1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1) = (b) \text{_____} \quad \leftarrow P(k)$$

[This is the inductive hypothesis.]

[We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is:] We must show that

$$(c)______ = (d)______ \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2(k+1) - 1)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k+1) && \text{by algebra} \\ &= [1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k-1)] + (2k+1) && \text{because (e) } ______ \\ &= k^2 + (2k+1) && \text{by (f) } ______ \\ &= (k+1)^2 && \text{by algebra,} \end{aligned}$$

which is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$ [as was to be shown.]

[Since we have proved the basis step and the inductive step, we conclude that the given statement is true.]

Note: This proof was annotated to help make its logical flow more obvious. In standard mathematical writing, such annotation is omitted.

Proof. a. 1^2 ; b. k^2 ; c. $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + [2(k+1) - 1]$; d. $(k+1)^2$; e. the next-to-last term is $2k-1$ because the odd integer just before $2k+1$ is $2k-1$; f. inductive hypothesis \square

Prove each statement in 6 – 9 using mathematical induction. Do not derive them from theorem 5.2.1 or Theorem 5.2.2.

2.6 Exercise 6

For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2n = n^2 + n.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2n = n^2 + n. \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: To prove $P(1)$, we must show that when 1 is substituted into the equation in place of n , the left-hand side equals the right-hand side. But when 1 is substituted for n , the left-hand side is the sum of all the even integers from 2 to $2 \geq 1$, which is just 2, and the right-hand side is $1^2 + 1$, which also equals 2. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2k = k^2 + k. \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2(k+1) = (k+1)^2 + (k+1).$$

Because $(k+1)^2 + (k+1) = k^2 + 2k + 1 + k + 1 = k^2 + 3k + 2$, this is equivalent to showing that

$$2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2(k+1) = k^2 + 3k + 2. \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2(k+1)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2k + 2(k+1) && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= (k^2 + k) + 2(k+1) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= k^2 + 3k + 2 && \text{by algebra,} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. *[Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.]* \square

2.7 Exercise 7

For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5n - 4) = \frac{n(5n - 3)}{2}.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5n - 4) = \frac{n(5n - 3)}{2}. \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: To prove $P(1)$, we must show that when 1 is substituted into the equation in place of n , the left-hand side equals the right-hand side. But when 1 is substituted for n , the left-hand side is the sum from 1 to $1 \geq 1$, which is just 1, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1(5-3)}{2}$, which also equals 1. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5k - 4) = \frac{k(5k - 3)}{2}. \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5(k+1) - 4) = \frac{(k+1)(5(k+1) - 3)}{2}.$$

Because $5(k+1) - 4 = 5k + 1$ and $5(k+1) - 3 = 5k + 2$, this is equivalent to showing that

$$1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5k + 1) = \frac{(k+1)(5k + 2)}{2}. \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5k+1)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \cdots + (5k-4) + (5k+1) && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\
 &= \frac{k(5k-3)}{2} + (5k+1) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= \frac{5k^2-3k}{2} + \frac{10k+2}{2} && \text{by algebra} \\
 &= \frac{5k^2-3k+10k+2}{2} && \text{by algebra} \\
 &= \frac{5k^2+7k+2}{2} && \text{by algebra} \\
 &= \frac{(k+1)(5k+2)}{2} && \text{by factoring,}
 \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.8 Exercise 8

For every integer $n \geq 0$,

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1. \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(0)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(0)$ is 1, and the right-hand side is $2^{0+1} - 1 = 2 - 1 = 1$ also. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^k = 2^{k+1} - 1. \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{k+1} = 2^{(k+1)+1} - 1,$$

or, equivalently,

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{k+1} = 2^{k+2} - 1. \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{k+1}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^k + 2^{k+1} && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\
 &= (2^{k+1} - 1) + 2^{k+1} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= 2 \cdot 2^{k+1} - 1 && \text{by combining like terms} \\
 &= 2^{k+2} - 1 && \text{by the laws of exponents}
 \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 0$.] \square

2.9 Exercise 9

For every integer $n \geq 3$,

$$4^3 + 4^4 + 4^5 + \cdots + 4^n = \frac{4(4^n - 16)}{3}.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$4^3 + 4^4 + 4^5 + \cdots + 4^n = \frac{4(4^n - 16)}{3}. \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(3)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(3)$ is $4^3 = 64$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{4(4^3 - 16)}{3} = 4 \cdot 48/3 = 64$ also. Thus $P(3)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 3$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 3$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$4^3 + 4^4 + 4^5 + \cdots + 4^k = \frac{4(4^k - 16)}{3}. \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$4^3 + 4^4 + 4^5 + \cdots + 4^{k+1} = \frac{4(4^{k+1} - 16)}{3}. \leftarrow P(k + 1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k + 1)$ is $4^3 + 4^4 + 4^5 + \cdots + 4^{k+1}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 4^3 + 4^4 + 4^5 + \cdots + 4^k + 4^{k+1} && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \frac{4(4^k - 16)}{3} + 4^{k+1} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{4(4^k - 16)}{3} + 4 \cdot 4^k && \text{by the laws of exponents} \\ &= 4 \left(\frac{4^k - 16}{3} + 4^k \right) && \text{by factoring} \\ &= 4 \left(\frac{4^k - 16}{3} + \frac{3 \cdot 4^k}{3} \right) && \text{by algebra} \\ &= 4 \left(\frac{4^k - 16 + 3 \cdot 4^k}{3} \right) && \text{by algebra} \\ &= 4 \left(\frac{4 \cdot 4^k - 16}{3} \right) && \text{by combining like terms} \\ &= 4 \left(\frac{4^{k+1} - 16}{3} \right) && \text{by the laws of exponents} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k + 1)$. Hence $P(k + 1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 3$.] \square

Prove each of the statements in 10 – 18 by mathematical induction.

2.10 Exercise 10

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $1^2 = 1$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1(1+1)(2+1)}{6} = \frac{2 \cdot 3}{6} = 1$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + k^2 = \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + (k+1)^2 = \frac{(k+1)((k+1)+1)(2(k+1)+1)}{6},$$

or, equivalently,

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + (k+1)^2 = \frac{(k+1)(k+2)(2k+3)}{6}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + (k+1)^2$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + k^2 + (k+1)^2 && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6} + (k+1)^2 && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6} + \frac{6(k+1)^2}{6} && \text{because } \frac{6}{6} = 1 \\ &= \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1) + 6(k+1)^2}{6} && \text{by adding fractions} \\ &= \frac{(k+1)[k(2k+1) + 6(k+1)]}{6} && \text{by factoring out } (k+1) \\ &= \frac{(k+1)[2k^2 + k + 6k + 6]}{6} && \text{by multiplying out} \\ &= \frac{(k+1)[2k^2 + 7k + 6]}{6} && \text{by combining like terms} \\ &= \frac{(k+1)(k+2)(2k+3)}{6} && \text{by factoring} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.11 Exercise 11

$$1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + n^3 = \left[\frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right]^2, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + n^3 = \left[\frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right]^2. \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $1^3 = 1$, and the right-hand side is $\left[\frac{1(1+1)}{2} \right]^2 = 1^2 = 1$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + k^3 = \left[\frac{k(k+1)}{2} \right]^2. \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + (k+1)^3 = \left[\frac{(k+1)(k+2)}{2} \right]^2. \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + (k+1)^3$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + k^3 + (k+1)^3 && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \left[\frac{k(k+1)}{2} \right]^2 + (k+1)^3 && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{k^2(k+1)^2}{4} + (k+1)(k+1)^2 && \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{k^2(k+1)^2}{4} + \frac{4(k+1)(k+1)^2}{4} && \text{because } \frac{4}{4} = 1 \\ &= \frac{k^2(k+1)^2 + 4(k+1)(k+1)^2}{4} && \text{by adding fractions} \\ &= \frac{(k+1)^2[k^2 + 4(k+1)]}{4} && \text{by factoring out } (k+1)^2 \\ &= \frac{(k+1)^2[k^2 + 4k + 4]}{4} && \text{by multiplying out} \\ &= \frac{(k+1)^2(k+2)^2}{4} && \text{by factoring} \\ &= \left[\frac{(k+1)(k+2)}{2} \right]^2 && \text{by factoring} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.12 Exercise 12

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = \frac{n}{n+1}, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = \frac{n}{n+1}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $\frac{1}{1 \cdot (1+1)} = 1/2$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1}{1+1} = 1/2$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k(k+1)} = \frac{k}{k+1}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(k+1)((k+1)+1)} = \frac{k+1}{(k+1)+1}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k(k+1)} + \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)} && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \frac{k}{k+1} + \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{k(k+2)}{(k+1)(k+2)} + \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)} && \text{because } \frac{k+2}{k+2} = 1 \\ &= \frac{k^2 + 2k}{(k+1)(k+2)} + \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)} && \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{k^2 + 2k + 1}{(k+1)(k+2)} && \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{(k+1)^2}{(k+1)(k+2)} && \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{k+1}{k+2} && \text{by canceling } k+1 \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.13 Exercise 13

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} i(i+1) = \frac{n(n-1)(n+1)}{3}, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 2.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} i(i+1) = \frac{n(n-1)(n+1)}{3}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(2)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^{2-1} i(i+1) = 1(1+1) = 2$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{2(2-1)(2+1)}{3} = \frac{6}{3} = 2$ also. Thus $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k-1} i(i+1) = \frac{k(k-1)(k+1)}{3}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+1-1} i(i+1) = \frac{(k+1)(k+1-1)(k+1+1)}{3},$$

or, equivalently,

$$\sum_{i=1}^k i(i+1) = \frac{(k+1)k(k+2)}{3}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^k i(i+1)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} i(i+1) + k(k+1) && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \frac{k(k-1)(k+1)}{3} + k(k+1) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{k(k-1)(k+1)}{3} + \frac{3k(k+1)}{3} && \text{because } \frac{3}{3} = 1 \\ &= \frac{k(k-1)(k+1) + 3k(k+1)}{3} && \text{by adding fractions} \\ &= \frac{k(k+1)[(k-1) + 3]}{3} && \text{by factoring out } k(k+1) \\ &= \frac{k(k+1)(k+2)}{3} && \text{by algebra} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 2$.] \square

2.14 Exercise 14

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} i \cdot 2^i = n \cdot 2^{n+2} + 2, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 0.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} i \cdot 2^i = n \cdot 2^{n+2} + 2. \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(0)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(0)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^{0+1} i \cdot 2^i = 1 \cdot 2^1 = 2$, and the right-hand side is $0 \cdot 2^{0+2} + 2 = 0 + 2 = 2$ also. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i \cdot 2^i = k \cdot 2^{k+2} + 2. \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{(k+1)+1} i \cdot 2^i = (k+1) \cdot 2^{(k+1)+2} + 2,$$

or, equivalently,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+2} i \cdot 2^i = (k+1) \cdot 2^{k+3} + 2. \leftarrow P(k+1).$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^{k+2} i \cdot 2^i$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i \cdot 2^i + (k+2) \cdot 2^{k+2} && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= k \cdot 2^{k+2} + 2 + (k+2) \cdot 2^{k+2} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= (2k+2) \cdot 2^{k+2} + 2 && \text{by combining like terms} \\ &= 2(k+1) \cdot 2^{k+2} + 2 && \text{by factoring out 2} \\ &= (k+1) \cdot 2^{k+3} + 2 && \text{by laws of exponents} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 0$.] \square

2.15 Exercise 15

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i(i!) = (n+1)! - 1, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i(i!) = (n+1)! - 1. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^1 i(i!) = 1(1!) = 1$, and the right-hand side is $(1+1)! - 1 = 2 - 1 = 1$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\sum_{i=1}^k i(i!) = (k+1)! - 1. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i(i!) = (k+2)! - 1. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} i(i!)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sum_{i=1}^k i(i!) + (k+1)(k+1)! && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= (k+1)! - 1 + (k+1)(k+1)! && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= (k+1)![1 + (k+1)] - 1 && \text{by factoring out } (k+1)! \\ &= (k+1)!(k+2) - 1 && \text{by algebra} \\ &= (k+2)! - 1 && \text{by definition of !} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.16 Exercise 16

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) = \frac{n+1}{2n}, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 2.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) = \frac{n+1}{2n}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(2)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(2)$ is $1 - \frac{1}{2^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{2+1}{2 \cdot 2} = \frac{3}{4}$ also. Thus $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{k^2}\right) = \frac{k+1}{2k}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}\right) = \frac{(k+1)+1}{2(k+1)}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k + 1)$ is $\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}\right)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{k^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}\right) \quad \text{show next-to-last term} \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2k} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}\right) \quad \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2k} \cdot \left(\frac{(k+1)^2}{(k+1)^2} - \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}\right) \quad \text{because } \frac{(k+1)^2}{(k+1)^2} = 1 \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2k} \cdot \frac{(k+1)^2 - 1}{(k+1)^2} \quad \text{by adding fractions} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{k+1}{2k} \cdot \frac{k^2 + 2k + 1 - 1}{(k+1)^2} \quad \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2k} \cdot \frac{k^2 + 2k}{(k+1)^2} \quad \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2k} \cdot \frac{k(k+2)}{(k+1)^2} \quad \text{by factoring out } k \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2} \cdot \frac{k+2}{(k+1)^2} \quad \text{by canceling out } k \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{k+2}{k+1} \quad \text{by canceling out } k+1 \\ &= \frac{k+2}{2(k+1)} \quad \text{by multiplying fractions} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k + 1)$. Hence $P(k + 1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 2$.] \square

2.17 Exercise 17

$$\prod_{i=0}^n \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right) = \frac{1}{(2n+2)!}, \text{ for every integer } n \geq 0.$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\prod_{i=0}^n \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right) = \frac{1}{(2n+2)!}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(0)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(0)$ is $\prod_{i=0}^0 \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right) = \frac{1}{2 \cdot 0 + 1} \cdot \frac{1}{2 \cdot 0 + 2} = \frac{1}{1} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1}{(2 \cdot 0 + 2)!} = \frac{1}{2}$ also. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\prod_{i=0}^k \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right) = \frac{1}{(2k+2)!} \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\prod_{i=0}^{k+1} \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right) = \frac{1}{(2(k+1)+2)!} \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\prod_{i=0}^{k+1} \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \prod_{i=0}^k \left(\frac{1}{2i+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2i+2} \right) \left(\frac{1}{2(k+1)+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2(k+1)+2} \right) && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2k+2)!} \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2(k+1)+1} \cdot \frac{1}{2(k+1)+2} \right) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2k+2)!} \cdot \frac{1}{2k+3} \cdot \frac{1}{2k+4} && \text{by algebra} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2k+2)! \cdot (2k+3) \cdot (2k+4)} && \text{by multiplying fractions} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2k+4)!} && \text{by definition of factorial} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 0$.] \square

2.18 Exercise 18

$\prod_{i=2}^n \left(1 - \frac{1}{i} \right) = \frac{1}{n}$, for every integer $n \geq 2$.

Hint: See the discussion at the beginning of this section.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\prod_{i=2}^n \left(1 - \frac{1}{i} \right) = \frac{1}{n} \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(2)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(2)$ is $\prod_{i=2}^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{i}\right) = 1 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1}{2}$ also. Thus $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\prod_{i=2}^k \left(1 - \frac{1}{i}\right) = \frac{1}{k}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\prod_{i=2}^{k+1} \left(1 - \frac{1}{i}\right) = \frac{1}{k+1}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\prod_{i=2}^{k+1} \left(1 - \frac{1}{i}\right)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \prod_{i=2}^k \left(1 - \frac{1}{i}\right) \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{k+1}\right) && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{k+1}\right) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \cdot \left(\frac{k+1}{k+1} - \frac{1}{k+1}\right) && \text{because } \frac{k+1}{k+1} = 1 \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \cdot \frac{k}{k+1} && \text{by adding fractions} \\ &= \frac{1}{k+1} && \text{by canceling } k \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 2$.] \square

2.19 Exercise 19

(For students who have studied calculus) Use mathematical induction, the product rule from calculus, and the facts that $\frac{d(x)}{dx} = 1$ and that $x^{k+1} = x \cdot x^k$ to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, $\frac{d(x^n)}{dx} = nx^{n-1}$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\frac{d(x^n)}{dx} = nx^{n-1}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $\frac{d(x^1)}{dx} = \frac{d(x)}{dx} = 1$, and the right-hand side is $1 \cdot x^{1-1} = 1$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\frac{d(x^k)}{dx} = kx^{k-1}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{ inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\frac{d(x^{k+1})}{dx} = (k+1)x^{k+1-1}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\frac{d(x^{k+1})}{dx}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{d(x \cdot x^k)}{dx} && \text{because } x^{k+1} = x \cdot x^k \\ &= \frac{d(x)}{dx} \cdot x^k + x \cdot \frac{d(x^k)}{dx} && \text{by the product rule} \\ &= 1 \cdot x^k + x \cdot \frac{d(x^k)}{dx} && \text{because } \frac{d(x)}{dx} = 1 \\ &= x^k + x \cdot (kx^{k-1}) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= x^k + kx^k && \text{by algebra} \\ &= (k+1)x^k && \text{by combining like terms} \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

Use the formula for the sum of the first n integers and/or the formula for the sum of a geometric sequence to evaluate the sums in 20 – 29 or to write them in closed form.

2.20 Exercise 20

$$4 + 8 + 12 + 16 + \cdots + 200$$

$$\text{Proof. } 4 + 8 + 12 + 16 + \cdots + 200 = 4(1 + 2 + \cdots + 50) = 4 \cdot \frac{50 \cdot 51}{2} = 5100 \quad \square$$

2.21 Exercise 21

$$5 + 10 + 15 + 20 + \cdots + 300$$

$$\text{Proof. } 5 + 10 + 15 + 20 + \cdots + 300 = 5(1 + 2 + \cdots + 60) = 5 \cdot \frac{60 \cdot 61}{2} = 9150 \quad \square$$

2.22 Exercise 22

2.22.1 (a)

$$3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + \cdots + 1000$$

Proof. $3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + \cdots + 1000 = (1 + 2 + \cdots + 1000) - (1 + 2) = \frac{1000 \cdot 1001}{2} - 3 = 500500 - 3 = 500497$ \square

2.22.2 (b)

$$3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + \cdots + m$$

Proof. $3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + \cdots + m = (1 + 2 + \cdots + m) - (1 + 2) = \frac{m(m+1)}{2} - 3$ \square

2.23 Exercise 23

2.23.1 (a)

$$7 + 8 + 9 + 10 + \cdots + 600$$

Proof. $7 + 8 + 9 + 10 + \cdots + 600 = 1 + 2 + \cdots + 600 - (1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6) = \frac{600 \cdot 601}{2} - \frac{6 \cdot 7}{2} = 18300 - 21 = 18279$ \square

2.23.2 (b)

$$7 + 8 + 9 + 10 + \cdots + k$$

Proof. $7 + 8 + 9 + 10 + \cdots + k = 1 + 2 + \cdots + k - (1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6) = \frac{k(k+1)}{2} - 21$ \square

2.24 Exercise 24

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + (k-1), \text{ where } k \text{ is any integer with } k \geq 2.$$

Proof. $1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + (k-1) = \frac{(k-1)(k-1+1)}{2} = \frac{(k-1)k}{2}$ \square

2.25 Exercise 25

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{25}$$

2.25.1 (a)

Proof. $1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{25} = \frac{2^{26} - 1}{2 - 1} = 2^{26} - 1$ \square

2.25.2 (b)

$$2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^{26}$$

Proof. $2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^{26} = 2(1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{25}) = 2(2^{26} - 1) = 2^{27} - 2$ \square

2.25.3 (c)

$$2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^n$$

Proof. $2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^n = 2(1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{n-1}) = 2(2^n - 1) = 2^{n+1} - 2$ \square

2.26 Exercise 26

$$3 + 3^2 + 3^3 + \cdots + 3^n, \text{ where } n \text{ is any integer with } n \geq 1.$$

Proof. $3 + 3^2 + 3^3 + \cdots + 3^n = 1 + 3 + 3^2 + 3^3 + \cdots + 3^n - 1 = \frac{3^{n+1} - 1}{3 - 1} - 1 = \frac{3^{n+1} - 1}{2} - 1$ \square

2.27 Exercise 27

$$5^3 + 5^4 + 5^5 + \cdots + 5^k, \text{ where } k \text{ is any integer with } k \geq 3.$$

Proof. $5^3 + 5^4 + 5^5 + \cdots + 5^k = 1 + 5 + 5^2 + 5^3 + 5^4 + 5^5 + \cdots + 5^k - (1 + 5 + 5^2) = (5^{k+1} - 1) - 31 = 5^{k+1} - 32$ \square

2.28 Exercise 28

$$1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n}, \text{ where } n \text{ is any positive integer.}$$

Proof. $1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+1} - 1}{\frac{1}{2} - 1} = -2 \left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+1} - 1 \right] = 2 - \frac{1}{2^n}$ \square

2.29 Exercise 29

$$1 - 2 + 2^2 - 2^3 + \cdots + (-1)^n 2^n, \text{ where } n \text{ is any positive integer.}$$

Proof. $1 - 2 + 2^2 - 2^3 + \cdots + (-1)^n 2^n = \frac{(-2)^{n+1} - 1}{-2 - 1} = \frac{(-2)^{n+1} - 1}{-3} = \frac{1 - (-2)^{n+1}}{3}$ \square

2.30 Exercise 30

Observe that $\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} = \frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} = \frac{2}{5}$, $\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \frac{1}{5 \cdot 7} = \frac{3}{7}$,

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \frac{1}{5 \cdot 7} + \frac{1}{7 \cdot 9} = \frac{4}{9}$$

Guess a general formula and prove it by induction.

Proof. General formula: For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n-1)(2n+1)} = \frac{n}{2n+1}$$

Proof by mathematical induction: For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n-1)(2n+1)} = \frac{n}{2n+1}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} = \frac{1}{3}$, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1}{2 \cdot 1 + 1} = \frac{1}{3}$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2k-1)(2k+1)} = \frac{k}{2k+1}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2(k+1)-1)(2(k+1)+1)} = \frac{k+1}{2(k+1)+1},$$

or, equivalently,

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} = \frac{k+1}{2k+3}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2k-1)(2k+1)} + \frac{1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} && \text{show next-to-last term} \\ &= \frac{k}{2k+1} + \frac{1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= \frac{k(2k+3)}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} + \frac{1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} && \text{because } \frac{2k+3}{2k+3} = 1 \\ &= \frac{2k^2 + 3k + 1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} && \text{by adding fractions} \\ &= \frac{(2k+1)(k+1)}{(2k+1)(2k+3)} && \text{by factoring} \\ &= \frac{k+1}{2k+3} && \text{by canceling } 2k+1 \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.31 Exercise 31

Compute values of the product

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)$$

for small values of n in order to conjecture a general formula for the product. Prove your conjecture by mathematical induction.

Proof. $\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) = 2$, $\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) = 3$, $\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) = 4$.

General formula: For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) = n + 1.$$

Proof by mathematical induction: For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) = n + 1. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $1 + \frac{1}{1} = 2$, and the right-hand side is $1 + 1 = 2$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{k}\right) = k + 1. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{k+1}\right) = k + 2. \quad \leftarrow P(k + 1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k + 1)$ is $\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{k+1}\right)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{1}{k}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{k+1}\right) && \text{show next-to-last term} \\ &= (k + 1) \cdot \left(1 + \frac{1}{k+1}\right) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= (k + 1) \cdot \left(\frac{k+1}{k+1} + \frac{1}{k+1}\right) && \text{because } \frac{k+1}{k+1} = 1 \\ &= (k + 1) \cdot \frac{k+2}{k+1} && \text{by adding fractions} \\ &= k + 2 && \text{by canceling } k + 1 \end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k + 1)$. Hence $P(k + 1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.32 Exercise 32

Observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 &= 1 \\
 1 - 4 &= -(1 + 2) \\
 1 - 4 + 9 &= 1 + 2 + 3 \\
 1 - 4 + 9 - 16 &= -(1 + 2 + 3 + 4) \\
 1 - 4 + 9 - 16 + 25 &= 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5
 \end{aligned}$$

Guess a general formula and prove it by mathematical induction.

Proof. General formula: For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i+1} i^2 = (-1)^{n+1} \sum_{j=1}^n j = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.$$

Proof by mathematical induction: For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i+1} i^2 = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{n(n+1)}{2}. \quad \leftarrow P(n)$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The left-hand side of $P(1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^1 (-1)^{i+1} i^2 = (-1)^2 1^2 = 1$,

and the right-hand side is $(-1)^{1+1} \frac{1(1+1)}{2} = 1$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose

$$\sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{i+1} i^2 = (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k(k+1)}{2}. \quad \leftarrow P(k): \text{inductive hypothesis}$$

We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} (-1)^{i+1} i^2 = (-1)^{k+2} \frac{(k+1)(k+2)}{2}. \quad \leftarrow P(k+1)$$

Now the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is $\sum_{i=1}^{k+1} (-1)^{i+1} i^2$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{i+1} i^2 + (-1)^{k+2} (k+1)^2 && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\
 &= (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k(k+1)}{2} + (-1)^{k+2} (k+1)^2 && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k(k+1)}{2} + (-1)^{k+1} (-1) (k+1)^2 && \text{by factoring a power of } -1 \\
 &= (-1)^{k+1} \left[\frac{k(k+1)}{2} - (k+1)^2 \right] && \text{by factoring out } (-1)^{k+1}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (-1)^{k+1} \left[\frac{k(k+1)}{2} - \frac{2(k+1)^2}{2} \right] && \text{because } \frac{2}{2} = 1 \\
&= (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k(k+1) - 2(k+1)^2}{2} && \text{by adding fractions} \\
&= (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k^2 + k - 2(k^2 + 2k + 1)}{2} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k^2 + k - 2k^2 - 4k - 2}{2} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= (-1)^{k+1} \frac{-k^2 - 3k - 2}{2} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= (-1)^{k+2} \frac{k^2 + 3k + 2}{2} && \text{by factoring out } (-1) \\
&= (-1)^{k+2} \frac{(k+2)(k+1)}{2} && \text{by factoring}
\end{aligned}$$

and this is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$. Hence $P(k+1)$ is true. [Since both the basis step and the inductive step have been proved, $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

2.33 Exercise 33

Find a formula in n, a, m , and d for the sum $(a + md) + (a + (m+1)d) + (a + (m+2)d) + \cdots + (a + (m+n)d)$, where m and n are integers, $n \geq 0$, and a and d are real numbers. Justify your answer.

Proof. $(a + md) + (a + (m+1)d) + (a + (m+2)d) + \cdots + (a + (m+n)d)$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{i=1}^n (a + (m+i)d) && \text{by summation notation} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n (a + md + id) && \text{by multiplying} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n (a + md) + \sum_{i=1}^n id && \text{by splitting the sum} \\
&= (a + md) \sum_{i=1}^n 1 + d \sum_{i=1}^n i && \text{by moving out constants} \\
&= (a + md)n + d \sum_{i=1}^n i && \text{because } \sum_{i=1}^n 1 = n \\
&= (a + md)n + d \cdot \frac{n(n+1)}{2} && \text{because } \sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

\square

2.34 Exercise 34

Find a formula in a, r, m , and n for the sum $ar^m + ar^{m+1} + ar^{m+2} + \cdots + ar^{m+n}$ where m and n are integers, $n \geq 0$, and a and r are real numbers. Justify your answer.

Proof. $ar^m + ar^{m+1} + ar^{m+2} + \cdots + ar^{m+n} = ar^m(1 + r + r^2 + \cdots + r^n) = ar^m \cdot \frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1}$ \square

2.35 Exercise 35

You have two parents, four grandparents, eight great-grandparents, and so forth.

2.35.1 (a)

If all your ancestors were distinct, what would be the total number of your ancestors for the past 40 generations (counting your parents' generation as number one)? (Hint: Use the formula for the sum of a geometric sequence.)

Proof. $2^1 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{40} = 2(1 + 2^1 + \cdots + 2^{39}) = 2 \cdot \frac{2^{40} - 1}{2 - 1} = 2^{41} - 2$ \square

2.35.2 (b)

Assuming that each generation represents 25 years, how long is 40 generations?

Proof. $25 \cdot 40 = 1000$ \square

2.35.3 (c)

The total number of people who have ever lived is approximately 10 billion, which equals 10^{10} people. Compare this fact with the answer to part (a). What can you deduce?

Proof. $2^{41} - 2 = 2,199,023,255,550 > 10,000,000,000 = 10^{10}$ so many of my ancestors are not distinct. \square

Find the mistakes in the proof fragments in 36 – 38.

2.36 Exercise 36

Theorem: For any integer $n \geq 1$, $1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$.

“Proof (by mathematical induction): Certainly the theorem is true for $n = 1$ because $1^2 = 1$ and $\frac{1(1+1)(2+1)}{6} = 1$. So the basis step is true. For the inductive step, suppose that k is any integer with $k \geq 1$, $k^2 = \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6}$. We must show that $(k+1)^2 = \frac{(k+1)((k+1)+1)(2(k+1)+1)}{6}$.”

Proof. In the inductive step, both the inductive hypothesis and what is to be shown are wrong. The inductive hypothesis should be:

Suppose that for some integer $k \geq 1$,

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + k^2 = \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6}.$$

And what is to be shown should be:

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + (k+1)^2 = \frac{(k+1)((k+1)+1)(2(k+1)+1)}{6}.$$

□

2.37 Exercise 37

Theorem: For any integer $n \geq 0$,

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1.$$

“Proof (by mathematical induction): Let the property $P(n)$ be

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1.$$

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

The left-hand side of $P(0)$ is $1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^0 = 1$ and the right-hand side is $2^{0+1} - 1 = 2 - 1 = 1$ also. So $P(0)$ is true.”

Hint: See the Caution note in Section 5.1, page 262.

Proof. The left-hand side of $P(0)$ is wrong; it should be simply 1 instead of $1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^0$. □

2.38 Exercise 38

Theorem: For any integer $n \geq 1$,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i(i!) = (n+1)! - 1.$$

“Proof (by mathematical induction): Let the property $P(n)$ be

$$1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1.$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true: When $n = 1$,

$$\sum_{i=1}^1 i(i!) = (1+1)! - 1.$$

So $1(1!) = 2! - 1$, and $1 = 1$. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Hint: See the subsection Proving an Equality on page 284 in Section 5.2.

Proof. For $P(1)$ this proof is assuming what is to be shown. The equality

$\sum_{i=1}^1 i(i!) = (1+1)! - 1$ is $P(1)$ which is what we need to show, but the proof assumes that this is true, then does operations on both sides to reach a true conclusion $1 = 1$. This proves that if $P(1)$ is true, then $1 = 1$ is true, but that does not prove $P(1)$ is true. \square

2.39 Exercise 39

Use Theorem 5.2.1 to prove that if m and n are any positive integers and m is odd, then

$\sum_{k=0}^{m-1} (n+k)$ is divisible by m . Does the conclusion hold if m is even? Justify your answer.

Proof. $\sum_{k=0}^{m-1} (n+k) = \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} n + \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} k = n \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} 1 + (0 + \sum_{k=1}^{m-1} k) = nm + \frac{(m-1)(m-1+1)}{2}$
 $= nm + \frac{(m-1)m}{2} = m(n + (m-1)/2)$ which is divisible by m if and only if $n + (m-1)/2$ is an integer, if and only if $m-1$ is even, if and only if m is odd. So the statement is true when m is odd and false when m is even. \square

2.40 Exercise 40

Use Theorem 5.2.1 and the result of Exercise 10 to prove that if p is any prime number with $p \geq 5$, then the sum of the squares of any p consecutive integers is divisible by p .

Proof. Assume p is any prime number with $p \geq 5$. Assume n is any integer and consider the p consecutive integers $n, n+1, \dots, n+p-1$. [We want to show $n^2 + (n+1)^2 + \dots + (n+p-1)^2$ is divisible by p .] Then

$$\begin{aligned} & n^2 + (n+1)^2 + (n+2)^2 + \dots + (n+p-1)^2 \\ &= n^2 + (n^2 + 2n + 1) + (n^2 + 2n \cdot 2 + 2^2) + \dots + (n^2 + 2n(p-1) + (p-1)^2) \\ &= pn^2 + 2n(1 + 2 + \dots + (p-1)) + (1^2 + 2^2 + \dots + (p-1)^2) \\ &= pn^2 + 2n \cdot \frac{(p-1)(p-1+1)}{2} + \frac{(p-1)(p-1+1)(2(p-1)+1)}{6} \\ &= pn^2 + n(p-1)p + \frac{(p-1)p(2p-1)}{6} \end{aligned}$$

We know that the sum of squares formula gives us an integer, so $\frac{(p-1)p(2p-1)}{6}$ is an integer. Since $p \geq 5$ is a prime, it is not divisible by 6, therefore $\frac{(p-1)(2p-1)}{6}$ is an integer. So

$$\begin{aligned} &= pn^2 + n(p-1)p + p \frac{(p-1)(2p-1)}{6} \\ &= p \left[n^2 + n(p-1) + \frac{(p-1)(2p-1)}{6} \right] \end{aligned}$$

is divisible by p . □

3 Exercise Set 5.3

3.1 Exercise 1

Use mathematical induction (and the proof of proposition 5.3.1 as a model) to show that any amount of money of at least 14¢ can be made up using 3¢ and 8¢ coins.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ n cents can be obtained by using 3-cent and 8-cent coins.”

We will show that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 14$.

Show that $P(14)$ is true: Fourteen cents can be obtained by using two 3-cent coins and one 8-cent coin.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 14$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is also true:

Suppose k is any integer with $k \geq 14$ such that k cents can be obtained using 3-cent and 8-cent coins [*Inductive hypothesis*].

We must show that $k + 1$ cents can be obtained using 3-cent and 8-cent coins.

If the k cents includes an 8-cent coin, replace it by three 3-cent coins to obtain a total of $k + 1$ cents.

Otherwise the k cents consists of 3-cent coins exclusively, and so there must be least five 3-cent coins (since the total amount is at least 14 cents).

In this case, replace five of the 3-cent coins by two 8-cent coin to obtain a total of $k + 1$ cents. Thus, in either case, $k + 1$ cents can be obtained using 3-cent and 8-cent coins. [*This is what we needed to show.*]

[*Since we have proved the basis step and the inductive step, we conclude that the given statement is true for every integer $n \geq 14$.*] □

3.2 Exercise 2

Use mathematical induction to show that any postage of at least 12¢ can be obtained using 3¢ and 7¢ stamps.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ n cents of postage can be obtained by using 3-cent and 7-cent stamps.”

We will show that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 12$.

Show that $P(12)$ is true: 12 cents of postage can be obtained by using four 3-cent stamps.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 12$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is also true:

Suppose k is any integer with $k \geq 12$ such that k cents of postage can be obtained using 3-cent and 7-cent stamps [*Inductive hypothesis*].

We must show that $k + 1$ cents of postage can be obtained using 3-cent and 7-cent stamps.

If the k cents of postage includes at least two 3-cent stamps, replace them by one 7-cent stamp to obtain a total of $k + 1$ cents of postage.

Otherwise the k cents of postage consists of zero or one 3-cent stamp and the rest is all 7-cent stamps.

In this case, there must be at least two 7-cent stamps (since the total postage is at least 12 cents and $12 - 3 = 9 > 7$). Then replace these two 7-cent stamps (which total 14) with five 3-cent stamps (which total 15) to obtain $k + 1$ cents of postage.

[*This is what we needed to show.*]

[*Since we have proved the basis step and the inductive step, we conclude that the given statement is true for every integer $n \geq 12$.*] \square

3.3 Exercise 3

Stamps are sold in packages containing either 5 stamps or 8 stamps.

3.3.1 (a)

Show that a person can obtain 5, 8, 10, 13, 15, 16, 20, 21, 24, or 25 stamps by buying a collection of 5-stamp packages and 8-stamp packages.

Proof. $5 = 5 \cdot 1, 8 = 8 \cdot 1, 10 = 5 \cdot 2, 13 = 5 + 8 = 5 \cdot 1 + 8 \cdot 1, 15 = 5 \cdot 3, 16 = 8 \cdot 2, 20 = 5 \cdot 4, 21 = 5 + 16 = 5 \cdot 1 + 8 \cdot 2, 24 = 8 \cdot 3, 25 = 5 \cdot 5.$

So in each case a person can get the required number of stamps by buying a collection of 5-stamp packages and 8-stamp packages. \square

3.3.2 (b)

Use mathematical induction to show that any quantity of at least 28 stamps can be obtained by buying a collection of 5-stamp packages and 8-stamp packages.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “a quantity of n stamps can be obtained by buying a collection of 5-stamp packages and 8-stamp packages.”

We will show that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 28$.

Show that $P(28)$ is true: $28 = 20 + 8 = 5 \cdot 4 + 8 \cdot 1$, so 28 stamps can be obtained by buying four 5-stamp packages and one 8-stamp package.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 28$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is also true:

Suppose k is any integer with $k \geq 28$ such that k stamps can be obtained by buying 5-stamp and 8-stamp packages [*Inductive hypothesis*].

We must show that $k + 1$ stamps can be obtained by buying 5-stamp and 8-stamp packages.

If the k stamps contain at least three 5-stamp packages (which total 15), then replace them with two 8-stamp packages (which total 16) to obtain $k + 1$ stamps.

Otherwise the k stamps contain at most two 5-stamp packages, and the rest is made up of 8-stamp packages. At most two 5-stamp packages total at most 10 stamps. Since there are at least 28 stamps, this leaves 18 stamps (out of k stamps) unaccounted. Since $8 \cdot 2 = 16 < 18 < 24 = 8 \cdot 3$, there must be at least three 8-stamp packages.

Then replace three 8-stamp packages (which total 24) with five 5-stamp packages (which total 25) in order to obtain $k + 1$ stamps. [*This is what we needed to show.*]

[*Since we have proved the basis step and the inductive step, we conclude that the given statement is true for every integer $n \geq 28$.*] \square

3.4 Exercise 4

For each positive integer n , let $P(n)$ be the sentence that describes the following divisibility property: $5^n - 1$ is divisible by 4.

3.4.1 (a)

Write $P(0)$. Is $P(0)$ true?

Proof. $P(0)$ is “ $5^0 - 1$ is divisible by 4”. It’s true since $5^0 - 1 = 1 - 1 = 0 = 4 \cdot 0$. \square

3.4.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is “ $5^k - 1$ is divisible by 4”. \square

3.4.3 (c)

Write $P(k + 1)$.

Proof. $P(k + 1)$ is “ $5^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 4”. \square

3.4.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that this divisibility property holds for every integer $n \geq 0$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. *Must show:* If k is any integer such that $k \geq 0$ and $5^k - 1$ is divisible by 4, then $5^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 4. \square

3.5 Exercise 5

For each positive integer n , let $P(n)$ be the inequality $2^n < (n + 1)!$.

3.5.1 (a)

Write $P(2)$. Is $P(2)$ true?

Proof. $P(2)$ is “ $2^2 < (2 + 1)!$ ”. It’s true because $2^2 = 4 < 6 = 3! = (2 + 1)!$. □

3.5.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is “ $2^k < (k + 1)!$ ”. □

3.5.3 (c)

Write $P(k + 1)$.

Proof. $P(k + 1)$ is “ $2^{k+1} < ((k + 1) + 1)!$ ”. □

3.5.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that this inequality holds for every integer $n \geq 2$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. *Must show:* If k is any integer such that $k \geq 2$ and $2^k < (k + 1)!$, then $2^{k+1} < ((k + 1) + 1)!$. □

3.6 Exercise 6

For each positive integer n , let $P(n)$ be the sentence:

Any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.

3.6.1 (a)

Write $P(1)$. Is $P(1)$ true?

Proof. $P(1)$ is the sentence “Any checkerboard with dimensions 2×3 can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.” The following diagram shows that $P(1)$ is true: □



3.6.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is the sentence “Any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3k$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.” □

3.6.3 (c)

Write $P(k + 1)$.

Proof. $P(k + 1)$ is the sentence “Any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3(k + 1)$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.” □

3.6.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that $P(n)$ is true for each integer $n \geq 1$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. The inductive step requires showing that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3k$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes, then any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3(k + 1)$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. □

3.7 Exercise 7

For each positive integer n , let $P(n)$ be the sentence:

In any round-robin tournament involving n teams, the teams can be labeled $T_1, T_2, T_3, \dots, T_n$, so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for every $i = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$.

3.7.1 (a)

Write $P(2)$. Is $P(2)$ true?

Proof. $P(2)$ is the sentence “In any round-robin tournament involving 2 teams, the teams can be labeled T_1, T_2 , so that T_1 beats T_2 .” It is true by Exercise 36 later. □

3.7.2 (b)

Write $P(k)$.

Proof. $P(k)$ is the sentence “In any round-robin tournament involving k teams, the teams can be labeled $T_1, T_2, T_3, \dots, T_k$, so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for every $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$.” □

3.7.3 (c)

Write $P(k+1)$.

Proof. $P(k+1)$ is the sentence “In any round-robin tournament involving $k+1$ teams, the teams can be labeled $T_1, T_2, T_3, \dots, T_{k+1}$, so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for every $i = 1, 2, \dots, k+1$.” \square

3.7.4 (d)

In a proof by mathematical induction that $P(n)$ is true for each integer $n \geq 2$, what must be shown in the inductive step?

Proof. The inductive step requires showing that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if in any round-robin tournament involving k teams, the teams can be labeled $T_1, T_2, T_3, \dots, T_k$, so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for every $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, then in any round-robin tournament involving $k+1$ teams, the teams can be labeled $T_1, T_2, T_3, \dots, T_{k+1}$, so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for every $i = 1, 2, \dots, k+1$. \square

Prove each statement in 8 – 23 by mathematical induction.

3.8 Exercise 8

$5^n - 1$ is divisible by 4, for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $5^n - 1$ is divisible by 4.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $5^0 - 1$ is divisible by 4.” Now $5^0 - 1 = 1 - 1 = 0$, and 0 is divisible by 4 because $0 = 4 \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $5^k - 1$ is divisible by 4. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $5^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 4. Now

$$5^{k+1} - 1 = 5^k \cdot 5 - 1 = 5^k \cdot (4 + 1) - 1 = 5^k \cdot 4 + (5^k - 1). \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $5^k - 1$ is divisible by 4, and so $5^k - 1 = 4r$ for some integer r . Substitute $4r$ in place of $5^k - 1$ in equation $(*)$, to obtain

$$5^{k+1} - 1 = 5^k \cdot 4 + 4r = 4(5^k + r).$$

But $5^k + r$ is an integer because k and r are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $5^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 4 [*as was to be shown*].

An alternative proof of the inductive step goes as follows:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose that $5^k - 1$ is divisible by 4. Then $5^k - 1 = 4r$ for some integer r , and hence $5^k = 4r + 1$. It follows that $5^{k+1} = 5k \cdot 5 = (4r + 1) \cdot 5 = 20r + 5$. Subtracting 1 from both sides gives that $5^{k+1} - 1 = 20r + 4 = 4(5r + 1)$. Now since $5r + 1$ is an integer, by definition of divisibility, $5^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 4. \square

3.9 Exercise 9

$7^n - 1$ is divisible by 6, for each integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $7^n - 1$ is divisible by 6.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $7^0 - 1$ is divisible by 6.” Now $7^0 - 1 = 1 - 1 = 0$, and 0 is divisible by 6 because $0 = 6 \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $7^k - 1$ is divisible by 6. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $7^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 6. Now

$$7^{k+1} - 1 = 7^k \cdot 7 - 1 = 7^k \cdot (6 + 1) - 1 = 7^k \cdot 6 + (7^k - 1). \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $7^k - 1$ is divisible by 6, and so $7^k - 1 = 6r$ for some integer r . Substitute $6r$ in place of $7^k - 1$ in equation (*), to obtain

$$7^{k+1} - 1 = 7^k \cdot 6 + 6r = 6(7^k + r).$$

But $7^k + r$ is an integer because k and r are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $7^{k+1} - 1$ is divisible by 6 [*as was to be shown*]. \square

3.10 Exercise 10

$n^3 - 7n + 3$ is divisible by 3, for each integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $n^3 - 7n + 3$ is divisible by 3.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $0^3 - 7 \cdot 0 + 3$ is divisible by 3.” Now $0^3 - 7 \cdot 0 + 3 = 3$, and 3 is divisible by 3 because $3 = 1 \cdot 3$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $k^3 - 7k + 3$ is divisible by 3. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $(k + 1)^3 - 7(k + 1) + 3$ is divisible by 3. Now

$$(k + 1)^3 - 7(k + 1) + 3 = k^3 + 3k^2 + 3k + 1 - 7k - 7 + 3 = (k^3 - 7k + 3) + 3(k^2 + k - 2). \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $k^3 - 7k + 3$ is divisible by 3, and so $k^3 - 7k + 3 = 3r$ for some integer r . Substitute $3r$ in place of $k^3 - 7k + 3$ in equation (*), to obtain

$$(k+1)^3 - 7(k+1) + 3 = 3r + 3(k^2 + k - 2) = 3(r + k^2 + k - 2).$$

But $r + k^2 + k - 2$ is an integer because k and r are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $(k+1)^3 - 7(k+1) + 3$ is divisible by 3 [as was to be shown]. \square

3.11 Exercise 11

$3^{2n} - 1$ is divisible by 8, for each integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $3^{2n} - 1$ is divisible by 8.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $3^{2 \cdot 0} - 1$ is divisible by 8.” Now $3^{2 \cdot 0} - 1 = 1 - 1 = 0$, and 0 is divisible by 8 because $0 = 8 \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $3^{2k} - 1$ is divisible by 8. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $3^{2(k+1)} - 1$ is divisible by 8. Now

$$3^{2(k+1)} - 1 = 3^{2k+2} - 1 = 3^{2k} \cdot 3^2 - 1 = 3^{2k} \cdot 9 - 1 = 3^{2k} \cdot (8 + 1) - 1 = 3^{2k} \cdot 8 + 3^{2k} - 1. (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $3^{2k} - 1$ is divisible by 8, and so $3^{2k} - 1 = 8r$ for some integer r . Substitute $8r$ in place of $3^{2k} - 1$ in equation (*), to obtain

$$3^{2(k+1)} - 1 = 3^{2k} \cdot 8 + 8r = 8(3^{2k} + r).$$

But $3^{2k} + r$ is an integer because k and r are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $3^{2(k+1)} - 1$ is divisible by 8 [as was to be shown]. \square

3.12 Exercise 12

For any integer $n \geq 0$, $7^n - 2^n$ is divisible by 5.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $7^n - 2^n$ is divisible by 5.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $7^0 - 2^0$ is divisible by 5.” Now $7^0 - 2^0 = 1 - 1 = 0$, and 0 is divisible by 5 because $0 = 5 \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $7^k - 2^k$ is divisible by 5. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $7^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}$ is divisible by 5. Now

$$7^{k+1} - 2^{k+1} = 7 \cdot 7^k - 2 \cdot 2^k = (5 + 2) \cdot 7^k - 2 \cdot 2^k = 5 \cdot 7^k + 2(7^k - 2^k). \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $7^k - 2^k$ is divisible by 5, and so $7^k - 2^k = 5r$ for some integer r . Substitute $5r$ in place of $7^k - 2^k$ in equation $(*)$, to obtain

$$7^{k+1} - 2^{k+1} = 5 \cdot 7^k + 2(5r) = 5(7^k + 2r).$$

But $7^k + 2r$ is an integer because k and r are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $7^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}$ is divisible by 5 [as was to be shown]. \square

3.13 Exercise 13

For any integer $n \geq 0$, $x^n - y^n$ is divisible by $x - y$, where x and y are any integers with $x \neq y$.

$$\text{Hint: } x^{k+1} - y^{k+1} = x^{k+1} - xy^k + xy^k - y^{k+1} = x(x^k - y^k) + y^k(x - y).$$

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $x^n - y^n$ is divisible by $x - y$.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $x^0 - y^0$ is divisible by $x - y$.” Now $x^0 - y^0 = 1 - 1 = 0$, and 0 is divisible by $x - y$ because $0 = (x - y) \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $x^k - y^k$ is divisible by $x - y$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $x^{k+1} - y^{k+1}$ is divisible by $x - y$. Now

$$x^{k+1} - y^{k+1} = x^{k+1} - xy^k + xy^k - y^{k+1} = x(x^k - y^k) + y^k(x - y). \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $x^k - y^k$ is divisible by $x - y$, and so $x^k - y^k = (x - y)r$ for some integer r . Substitute $(x - y)r$ in place of $x^k - y^k$ in equation $(*)$, to obtain

$$x^{k+1} - y^{k+1} = x(x - y)r + y^k(x - y) = (x - y)[xr + y^k].$$

But $xr + y^k$ is an integer because k, x, y and r are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $x^{k+1} - y^{k+1}$ is divisible by $x - y$ [as was to be shown]. \square

3.14 Exercise 14

$n^3 - n$ is divisible by 6, for each integer $n \geq 0$.

$$\text{Hint 1: } (k+1)^3 - (k+1) = k^3 + 3k^2 + 3k + 1 - k - 1 = (k^3 - k) + 3k^2 + 3k = (k^3 - k) + 3k(k+1).$$

Hint 2: $k(k + 1)$ is a product of two consecutive integers. By Theorem 4.5.2, one of these must be even.

Proof. Note: It is possible to prove this without mathematical induction, because $n^3 - n = n(n^2 - 1) = n(n - 1)(n + 1)$ is the product of 3 consecutive integers. Therefore one of them is divisible by 3, and one of them is even, hence their product is divisible by 6.

For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $n^3 - n$ is divisible by 6.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $n^3 - n$ is divisible by 6.” Now $0^3 - 0 = 0 - 0 = 0$, and 0 is divisible by 6 because $0 = 6 \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $k^3 - k$ is divisible by 6. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $(k + 1)^3 - (k + 1)$ is divisible by 6. Now

$$(k + 1)^3 - (k + 1) = k^3 + 3k^2 + 3k + 1 - k - 1 = (k^3 - k) + 3k(k + 1). \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $k^3 - k$ is divisible by 6, and so $k^3 - k = 6r$ for some integer r . Moreover $k(k + 1)$ is even by Theorem 4.5.2, so $k(k + 1) = 2s$ for some integer s . Substitute $6r$ in place of $k^3 - k$ and $2s$ in place of $k(k + 1)$ in equation $(*)$, to obtain

$$(k + 1)^3 - (k + 1) = 6r + 3(2s) = 6r + 6s = 6(r + s).$$

But $r + s$ is an integer because r and s are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $(k + 1)^3 - (k + 1)$ is divisible by 6 [*as was to be shown*]. \square

3.15 Exercise 15

$n(n^2 + 5)$ is divisible by 6, for each integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the sentence “ $n(n^2 + 5)$ is divisible by 6.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ is the sentence “ $0(0^2 + 5)$ is divisible by 6.” Now $0(0^2 + 5) = 0$, and 0 is divisible by 6 because $0 = 6 \cdot 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $k(k^2 + 5)$ is divisible by 6. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $(k + 1)((k + 1)^2 + 5)$ is divisible by 6. Now

$$\begin{aligned} (k + 1)((k + 1)^2 + 5) &= (k + 1)^3 + 5(k + 1) = k^3 + 3k^2 + 3k + 1 + 5k + 5 = \\ &= (k^3 + 5k) + (3k^2 + 3k + 6) = k(k^2 + 5) + 3(k^2 + k + 2) = k(k^2 + 5) + 3(k(k + 1) + 2). \end{aligned} \quad (*)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, $k(k^2 + 5)$ is divisible by 6, and so $k(k^2 + 5) = 6r$ for some integer r . Moreover $k(k + 1)$ is even by Theorem 4.5.2, so $k(k + 1) = 2s$ for some integer s . Substitute $6r$ in place of $k(k^2 + 5)$ and $2s$ in place of $k(k + 1)$ in equation $(*)$, to obtain

$$(k + 1)((k + 1)^2 + 5) = 6r + 3(2s + 2) = 6r + 6s + 6 = 6(r + s + 1).$$

But $r+s+1$ is an integer because r and s are integers. Hence, by definition of divisibility, $(k+1)((k+1)^2+5)$ is divisible by 6 [as was to be shown]. \square

3.16 Exercise 16

$2^n < (n+1)!$, for every integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $2^n < (n+1)!$.

Show that $P(2)$ is true:

$P(2)$ says that $2^2 < (2+1)!$. The left-hand side is $2^2 = 4$ and the right-hand side is $(2+1)! = 3! = 6$. So, because $4 < 6$, $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $2^k < (k+1)!$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $2^{k+1} < ((k+1)+1)!$, or, equivalently, $2^{k+1} < (k+2)!$. By the laws of exponents and the induction hypothesis,

$$2^{k+1} = 2 \cdot 2^k < 2(k+1)!.$$

Since $k \geq 2$, then $2 < k+2$, so

$$2^{k+1} = 2 \cdot 2^k < 2(k+1)! < (k+2)(k+1)! = (k+2)!.$$

So $2^{k+1} < (k+2)!$ [as was to be shown]. \square

3.17 Exercise 17

$1 + 3n \leq 4^n$, for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $1 + 3n \leq 4^n$.

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ says that $1 + 3 \cdot 0 \leq 4^0$. The left-hand side is $1 + 3 \cdot 0 = 1$ and the right-hand side is $4^0 = 1$. So, because $1 \leq 1$, $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $1 + 3k \leq 4^k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $1 + 3(k+1) \leq 4^{k+1}$, or, equivalently, $1 + 3k + 3 < 4 \cdot 4^k$.

Now by the induction hypothesis, $1 + 3k + 3 \leq 4^k + 3$. So we need to show that $4^k + 3 \leq 4 \cdot 4^k$.

Since $0 \leq k$, we have $1 \leq 4^k$. So $3 \leq 3 \cdot 4^k$. Adding 4^k to both sides we get $3 + 4^k \leq 3 \cdot 4^k + 4^k = 4 \cdot 4^k$. Thus $3 + 4^k \leq 4 \cdot 4^k$.

So we have $1 + 3k + 3 \leq 4^k + 3$ and $3 + 4^k \leq 4 \cdot 4^k$. Combining these we get $1 + 3k + 3 \leq 4 \cdot 4^k$, in other words $1 + 3(k+1) \leq 4^{k+1}$, [as was to be shown]. \square

3.18 Exercise 18

$5^n + 9 < 6^n$, for each integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $5^n + 9 < 6^n$.

Show that $P(2)$ is true:

$P(2)$ says that $5^2 + 9 < 6^2$. The left-hand side is $5^2 + 9 = 25 + 9 = 34$ and the right-hand side is $6^2 = 36$. So, because $34 < 36$, $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $5^k + 9 < 6^k$. *[This is the inductive hypothesis.]* We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $5^{k+1} + 9 < 6^{k+1}$. Now by laws of exponents and the induction hypothesis,

$$5^{k+1} + 9 = 5 \cdot 5^k + 9 = (4 + 1) \cdot 5^k + 9 = 4 \cdot 5^k + (5^k + 9) < 4 \cdot 5^k + 6^k. (*)$$

So we need to show $4 \cdot 5^k + 6^k < 6^{k+1}$.

Notice that since $4 < 5$ (and 5^k is positive) we have $4 \cdot 5^k < 5 \cdot 5^k$, and since $5 < 6$ (and $k \geq 2$) we have $5^k < 6^k$, and therefore $5 \cdot 5^k < 5 \cdot 6^k$. By transitivity of $<$, we get $4 \cdot 5^k < 5 \cdot 6^k$.

Since $4 \cdot 5^k < 5 \cdot 6^k$, adding 6^k to both sides we get $4 \cdot 5^k + 6^k < 5 \cdot 6^k + 6^k = 6 \cdot 6^k = 6^{k+1}$.

Combining this with (*) we get $5^{k+1} + 9 < 6^{k+1}$, *[as was to be shown]*. □

3.19 Exercise 19

$n^2 < 2^n$, for every integer $n \geq 5$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $n^2 < 2^n$.

Show that $P(5)$ is true:

$P(5)$ says that $5^2 < 2^5$. The left-hand side is $5^2 = 25$ and the right-hand side is $2^5 = 32$. So, because $25 < 32$, $P(5)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 5$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 5$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $k^2 < 2^k$. *[This is the inductive hypothesis.]* We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $(k+1)^2 < 2^{k+1}$.

Now by algebra and the induction hypothesis, $(k+1)^2 = k^2 + 2k + 1 < 2^k + 2k + 1$. Also by Proposition 5.3.2, $2k + 1 < 2^k$. Putting these inequalities together gives

$$(k+1)^2 < 2^k + 2k + 1 < 2^k + 2^k = 2 \cdot 2^k = 2^{k+1}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

3.20 Exercise 20

$2^n < (n + 2)!$, for each integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $n^2 < 2^n$.

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

$P(0)$ says that $2^0 < (0 + 2)!$. The left-hand side is $2^0 = 1$ and the right-hand side is $(0 + 2)! = 2! = 2$. So, because $1 < 2$, $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $2^k < (k + 2)!$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $2^{k+1} < (k + 3)!$.

Now $2^{k+1} = 2 \cdot 2^k < 2 \cdot (k + 2)!$ by the induction hypothesis. Since $k \geq 0$, we have $2 < k + 3$, so $2 \cdot (k + 2)! < (k + 3) \cdot (k + 2)! = (k + 3)!$. Putting these two inequalities together gives $2^{k+1} < (k + 3)!$, [as was to be shown]. \square

3.21 Exercise 21

$\sqrt{n} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}$, for every integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $\sqrt{n} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}$.

Show that $P(2)$ is true:

$P(2)$ says that $\sqrt{2} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$. The left-hand side is $\sqrt{2} \approx 1.414$ and the right-hand side is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \approx 1 + \frac{1}{1.414} = 1.707$. So, because $1.414 < 1.707$, $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $\sqrt{k} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}}$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $\sqrt{k + 1} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k + 1}}$.

Now the right-hand side of $P(k + 1)$ is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k + 1}}$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}} && \text{make next-to-last term explicit} \\
&> \sqrt{k} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
&= \sqrt{k} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{k+1}}{\sqrt{k+1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}} && \text{because } \frac{\sqrt{k+1}}{\sqrt{k+1}} = 1 \\
&> \sqrt{k} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{k}}{\sqrt{k+1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}} && \text{because } k+1 > k \\
&= \frac{k}{\sqrt{k+1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= \frac{k+1}{\sqrt{k+1}} && \text{by adding fractions} \\
&= \sqrt{k+1} && \text{by canceling } \sqrt{k+1}
\end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

3.22 Exercise 22

$1 + nx \leq (1 + x)^n$, for every real number $x > -1$ and every integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the statement “ $1 + nx \leq (1 + x)^n$, for every real number $x > -1$ ”.

Show that $P(2)$ is true:

$P(2)$ says that $1 + 2x \leq (1 + x)^2$, for every real number $x > -1$. The left-hand side is $1 + 2x$ and the right-hand side is $(1 + x)^2 = 1 + 2x + x^2$. So, because $0 \leq x^2$ for every real number $x > -1$, adding $1 + 2x$ to both sides gives us $1 + 2x \leq 1 + 2x + x^2$. So $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $1 + kx \leq (1 + x)^k$, for every real number $x > -1$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $1 + (k + 1)x \leq (1 + x)^{k+1}$, for every real number $x > -1$.

Now the left-hand side of $P(k + 1)$ is $1 + (k + 1)x = 1 + kx + x \leq (1 + x)^k + x$ by inductive hypothesis.

We want to show $x \leq x(1 + x)^k$. There are two cases:

Case 1: $-1 < x < 0$. Then $0 < 1 + x < 1$, so $0 < (1 + x)^k < 1$. So $0 > x(1 + x)^k > x$ (since x is negative).

Case 2: $0 \leq x$. Then $1 \leq 1 + x$, so $1 \leq (1 + x)^k$. Multiplying both sides by x we get $x \leq x(1 + x)^k$ since x is positive.

Combining the two inequalities $1 + (k + 1)x \leq (1 + x)^k + x$ and $x \leq x(1 + x)^k$ we get

$$1 + (k + 1)x \leq (1 + x)^k + x(1 + x)^k = (1 + x)^k(1 + x) = (1 + x)^{k+1}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

3.23 Exercise 23

3.23.1 (a)

$n^3 > 2n + 1$, for each integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $n^3 > 2n + 1$.

Show that $P(2)$ is true:

$P(2)$ says that $2^3 > 2 \cdot 2 + 1$. The left-hand side is $2^3 = 8$ and the right-hand side is $2 \cdot 2 + 1 = 5$. So, because $8 > 5$, $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $k^3 > 2k + 1$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $(k + 1)^3 > 2(k + 1) + 1$.

Now $(k + 1)^3 = k^3 + 3k^2 + 3k + 1 > (2k + 1) + 3k^2 + 3k + 1$ by the induction hypothesis. Since $k \geq 2$, we have $3k^2 + 3k \geq 3 \cdot 2^2 + 3 \cdot 2 = 18 > 2$, so

$$(k + 1)^3 > (2k + 1) + 3k^2 + 3k + 1 > 2k + 1 + 2 = 2k + 3 = 2(k + 1) + 1$$

[as was to be shown]. □

3.23.2 (b)

$n! > n^2$, for each integer $n \geq 4$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the inequality $n! > n^2$.

Show that $P(4)$ is true:

$P(4)$ says that $4! > 4^2$. The left-hand side is $4! = 24$ and the right-hand side is $4^2 = 16$. So, because $24 > 16$, $P(4)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 4$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 4$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $k! > k^2$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k + 1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $(k + 1)! > (k + 1)^2$.

We have $(k + 1)! = (k + 1) \cdot k! > (k + 1) \cdot k^2$ by the induction hypothesis. So we need to show $(k + 1) \cdot k^2 > (k + 1)^2$, or, equivalently, $k^2 > k + 1$, or equivalently $k^2 - k - 1 > 0$.

From analytic geometry, we know that the roots of the equation $k^2 - k - 1 = 0$ are $k = \frac{-(-1) \pm \sqrt{(-1)^2 - 4(1)(-1)}}{2(1)} = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2} \approx 0.618$ and 1.618 . Since the leading coefficient of the quadratic polynomial $k^2 - k - 1$ is positive, it has a U-shape and it's

positive for all values of k greater than the larger root 1.618. Since $k \geq 4$ it follows that $k^2 - k - 1 > 0$. \square

3.24 Exercise 24

A sequence a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots is defined by letting $a_1 = 3$ and $a_k = 7a_{k-1}$ for each integer $k \geq 2$. Show that $a_n = 3 \cdot 7^n - 1$ for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. For the given statement, the property $P(n)$ is the equation $a_n = 3 \cdot 7^{n-1}$.

Show that $P(1)$ is true:

The left-hand side is a_1 , which equals 3 by the definition of the sequence. The right-hand side is $3 \cdot 7^{1-1} = 3$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose $P(k)$ is true. That is, suppose $a_k = 3 \cdot 7^{k-1}$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $P(k+1)$ is true. That is, we must show that $a_{k+1} = 3 \cdot 7^{(k+1)-1}$, or, equivalently, $a_{k+1} = 3 \cdot 7^k$. But the left-hand side of $P(k+1)$ is a_{k+1}

$$\begin{aligned} a_{k+1} &= 7a_k && \text{by definition of the sequence} \\ &= 7(3 \cdot 7^{k-1}) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= 3 \cdot 7^k && \text{by laws of exponents} \end{aligned}$$

which is the right-hand side of $P(k+1)$, [as was to be shown]. \square

3.25 Exercise 25

A sequence b_0, b_1, b_2, \dots is defined by letting $b_0 = 5$ and $b_k = 4 + b_{k-1}$ for each integer $k \geq 1$. Show that $b_n > 4n$ for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the inequality $b_n > 4n$.

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

The left-hand side is b_0 , which equals 5 by the definition of the sequence. The right-hand side is $4 \cdot 0 = 0$ and $5 > 0$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose that $b_k > 4k$ (inductive hypothesis). We must show that $b_{k+1} > 4(k+1)$. Now

$$\begin{aligned} b_{k+1} &= 4 + b_k && \text{by definition of the sequence} \\ &> 4 + 4k && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= 4(1 + k) && \text{by factoring out a 4} \\ &= 4(k+1) && \text{by commutative law for addition} \end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. \square

3.26 Exercise 26

A sequence c_0, c_1, c_2, \dots is defined by letting $c_0 = 3$ and $c_k = (c_{k-1})^2$ for every integer $k \geq 1$. Show that $c_n = 3^{2^n}$ for each integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation $c_n = 3^{2^n}$.

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

The left-hand side is c_0 , which equals 3 by the definition of the sequence. The right-hand side is $3^{2^0} = 3^1 = 3$ and $3 = 3$. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose that $c_k = 3^{2^k}$ (inductive hypothesis). We must show that $c_{k+1} = 3^{2^{k+1}}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned} c_{k+1} &= (c_k)^2 && \text{by definition of the sequence} \\ &= (3^{2^k})^2 && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= 3^{2^k \cdot 2} && \text{by laws of exponents} \\ &= 3^{2^{k+1}} && \text{by laws of exponents} \end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

3.27 Exercise 27

A sequence d_1, d_2, d_3, \dots is defined by letting $d_1 = 2$ and $d_k = \frac{d_{k-1}}{k}$ for each integer $k \geq 2$. Show that for every integer $n \geq 1$, $d_n = \frac{2}{n!}$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation $d_n = \frac{2}{n!}$.

Show that $P(1)$ is true:

The left-hand side is d_1 , which equals 2 by the definition of the sequence. The right-hand side is $\frac{2}{1!} = 2$ and $2 = 2$. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose that $d_k = \frac{2}{k!}$ (inductive hypothesis). We must show that $d_{k+1} = \frac{2}{(k+1)!}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
d_{k+1} &= \frac{d_k}{k+1} && \text{by definition of the sequence} \\
&= \frac{\frac{2}{k!}}{k+1} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
&= \frac{2}{k!(k+1)} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= \frac{2}{(k+1)!} && \text{by definition of !}
\end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

3.28 Exercise 28

Prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1)}{(2n + 1) + (2n + 3) + \cdots + (2n + (2n - 1))}$$

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation

$$\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1)}{(2n + 1) + (2n + 3) + \cdots + (2n + (2n - 1))}.$$

Show that $P(1)$ is true:

The left-hand side is $1/3$. The right-hand side is $\frac{1}{(2 \cdot 1 + 1)} = 1/3$ also. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose that

$$\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1)}{(2k + 1) + (2k + 3) + \cdots + (2k + (2k - 1))}$$

([inductive hypothesis](#)). We must show that

$$\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2(k + 1) - 1)}{(2(k + 1) + 1) + (2(k + 1) + 3) + \cdots + (2(k + 1) + (2(k + 1) - 1))}.$$

Now from the inductive hypothesis, we get by cross-multiplying:

$$(2k + 1) + (2k + 3) + \cdots + (2k + (2k - 1)) = 3[1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1)]$$

For each term on the left-hand side, we add 2 to both sides. This way, $(2k + 1)$ becomes $(2k + 1) + 2 = (2(k + 1) + 1)$, $(2k + 3)$ becomes $(2k + 3) + 2 = (2(k + 1) + 3)$, and so on. There are $(2k - 1 + 1)/2 = k$ terms on the left-hand side, therefore we are adding a total of $2k$ to both sides. We get:

$$(2(k + 1) + 1) + (2(k + 1) + 3) + \cdots + (2(k + 1) + (2k - 1)) = 3[1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k - 1)] + 2k$$

Now add the last missing term $(2(k+1) + (2(k+1) - 1))$ to both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} & (2(k+1) + 1) + (2(k+1) + 3) + \cdots + (2(k+1) + (2k-1)) + (2(k+1) + (2(k+1) - 1)) \\ &= 3[1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k-1)] + 2k + (2(k+1) + (2(k+1) - 1)) \end{aligned}$$

Notice that $2k + (2(k+1) + (2(k+1) - 1)) = 6k + 3 = 3(2k+1) = 3(2(k+1) - 1)$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} & (2(k+1) + 1) + (2(k+1) + 3) + \cdots + (2(k+1) + (2k-1)) + (2(k+1) + (2(k+1) - 1)) \\ &= 3[1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2k-1) + (2(k+1) - 1)]. \end{aligned}$$

Dividing both sides by (3 times the left-hand side), we get:

$$\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2(k+1) - 1)}{(2(k+1) + 1) + (2(k+1) + 3) + \cdots + (2(k+1) + (2(k+1) - 1))}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

Exercises 29 and 30 use the definition of string and string length from page 13 in Section 1.4. Recursive definitions for these terms are given in Section 5.9.

3.29 Exercise 29

A set L consists of strings obtained by juxtaposing one or more of abb , bab , and bba . Use mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, if a string s in L has length $3n$, then s contains an even number of b 's.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “If a string s in L has length $3n$, then s contains an even number of b 's.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: $P(1)$ is the statement that a string s in L of length 3 contains an even number of b 's. The only strings in L that have length 3 are abb , bab , and bba , and each of these strings has an even number of b 's. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true: Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$ and suppose that if a string s in L has length $3k$, then s contains an even number of b 's. $\leftarrow P(k)$ inductive hypothesis

We must show that if a string s in L has length $3(k+1)$, then s contains an even number of b 's. $\leftarrow P(k+1)$

So, suppose s is a string in L that has length $3(k+1)$. Now $3(k+1) = 3k + 3$ and the strings in L are obtained by juxtaposing strings already in L with one of abb , bab , or bba . Thus, either the initial or the final three characters in s are abb , bab , or bba . Moreover, the other $3k$ characters in s are also in L by definition of L , and so, by inductive hypothesis, the other $3k$ characters in s contain an even number, say m , of b 's. Because each of abb , bab , and bba contains 2 b 's, the total number of b 's in s is $m + 2$, which is a sum of even integers and hence is even [as was to be shown]. □

3.30 Exercise 30

A set S consists of strings obtained by juxtaposing one or more copies of 1110 and 0111. Use mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, if a string s in S has length $4n$, then the number of 1's in s is a multiple of 3.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “If a string s in S has length $4n$, then the number of 1's in s is a multiple of 3.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: $P(1)$ is the statement that a string s in S of length 4 contains zero or three 1's. The only strings in S that have length 4 are 1110 and 0111, and each of these strings has three 1's. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true: Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$ and suppose that if a string s in S has length $4k$, then the number of 1's in s is a multiple of 3. $\leftarrow P(k)$ inductive hypothesis

We must show that if a string s in S has length $4(k+1)$, then the number of 1's in s is a multiple of 3. $\leftarrow P(k+1)$

So, suppose s is a string in S that has length $4(k+1)$. Now $4(k+1) = 4k + 4$ and the strings in S are obtained by juxtaposing strings already in S with one of 1110 or 0111. Thus, either the initial or the final four characters in s are 1110 or 0111. Moreover, the other $4k$ characters in s are also in S by definition of S , and so, by inductive hypothesis, the other $4k$ characters in s contain a number of 1's divisible by 3, say $3m$ 1's. Because each of 1110 and 0111 contains three 1's, the total number of 1's in s is $3m+3 = 3(m+1)$, which is a multiple of 3 [as was to be shown]. \square

3.31 Exercise 31

Use mathematical induction to give an alternative proof for the statement proved in Example 4.9.9: For any positive integer n , a complete graph on n vertices has $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ edges.

Hint: Let $P(n)$ be the sentence, “the number of edges in a complete graph on n vertices is $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$.”

Proof. Let $P(n)$ be as in the Hint above.

Show that $P(1)$ is true: A complete graph on 1 vertex has no edges, and $\frac{1(1-1)}{2} = 0$, so $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$ if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$ and suppose that a complete graph on k vertices has $\frac{k(k-1)}{2}$ edges. $\leftarrow P(k)$ inductive hypothesis

We must show that a complete graph on $k+1$ vertices has $\frac{(k+1)k}{2}$ edges. $\leftarrow P(k+1)$

Let K_{k+1} be a complete graph on $k+1$ vertices labeled v_1, \dots, v_k, v_{k+1} . Consider the subgraph K_k of K_{k+1} which is a complete graph on the first k vertices v_1, \dots, v_k .

Then the edges of K_{k+1} can be divided into two disjoint sets: the edges of K_k , and the edges between v_{k+1} and all the other edges v_1, \dots, v_k .

By the inductive hypothesis the first set has $\frac{k(k-1)}{2}$ edges. Since K_{k+1} is complete, the second set has k additional edges (one edge between v_{k+1} and each one of v_1, \dots, v_k).

Therefore the total number of edges of K_{k+1} is the total of the two sets: $\frac{k(k-1)}{2} + k = \frac{k^2 - k + 2k}{2} = \frac{k^2 + k}{2} = \frac{(k+1)k}{2}$, [as was to be shown.] \square

3.32 Exercise 32

Some 5×5 checkerboards with one square removed can be completely covered by L-shaped trominoes, whereas other 5×5 checkerboards cannot. Find examples of both kinds of checkerboards. Justify your answers.

Hint: Consider the problem of trying to cover a 3×3 checkerboard with trominoes. Place a checkmark in certain squares as shown in the following figure.

✓		✓
✓		✓

Observe that no two squares containing checkmarks can be covered by the same tromino. Since there are four checkmarks, four trominoes would be needed to cover these squares. But, since each tromino covers three squares, four trominoes would cover twelve squares, not the nine squares in this checkerboard. It follows that such a covering is impossible.

Proof. For example, if we remove the center square, then the 5×5 board can be covered by L-shaped trominoes:

■	■	■	■	■
■	■	■	■	■
■	■		■	■
■	■	■	■	■
■	■	■	■	■

There are many other ways to remove 1 square from the 25, to make it work. The above is not the only one.

(Following the Hint) All 25 squares cannot be completely covered by L-shaped trominoes:

✓		✓		✓
✓		✓		✓
✓		✓		✓

\square

No two squares with checkmarks can be covered by the same L-shaped tromino. Since there are 9 checkmarks, we would need at least 9 trominoes, which cover 27 squares, exceeding the 25 squares. Therefore such a covering is impossible.

3.33 Exercise 33

Consider a 4×6 checkerboard. Draw a covering of the board by L-shaped trominoes.



□

3.34 Exercise 34

3.34.1 (a)

Use mathematical induction to prove that for each integer $n \geq 1$, any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.

Hint: For the inductive step, note that a $2 \times 3(k+1)$ checkerboard can be split into a $2 \times 3k$ checkerboard and a 2×3 checkerboard.

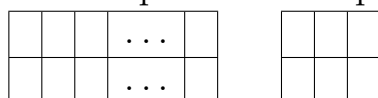
Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be “any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: $P(1)$ says “A checkerboard with dimensions 2×3 can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.” This is true:



Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$ if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true: Suppose k is any integer with $k \geq 1$ such that $P(k)$ is true. That is, any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3k$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. We want to show $P(k+1)$, that is, we want to show that any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3(k+1)$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.

Consider any checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3(k+1)$, in other words with dimensions $2 \times (3k+3)$. This board can be split into two parts: a $2 \times 3k$ board on the left, and a 2×3 board on the right:



By the inductive hypothesis, the left part with dimensions $2 \times 3k$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. By $P(1)$, the right part with dimensions 2×3 can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. Putting these two coverings together we see that the whole board with dimensions $2 \times 3(k+1)$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes, [as was to be shown.] □

3.34.2 (b)

Let n be any integer greater than or equal to 1. Use the result of part (a) to prove by mathematical induction that for every integer $m \geq 1$, any checkerboard with dimensions $2m \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.

Proof. Let the property $Q(m)$ be “any checkerboard with dimensions $2m \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.”

Show that $Q(1)$ is true: $Q(1)$ says “A checkerboard with dimensions $2 \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.” This is true by part (a).

Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$ if $Q(k)$ is true then $Q(k+1)$ is true: Suppose k is any integer with $k \geq 1$ such that $Q(k)$ is true. That is, any checkerboard with dimensions $2k \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. We want to show $Q(k+1)$, that is, we want to show that any checkerboard with dimensions $2(k+1) \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes.

Consider any checkerboard with dimensions $2(k+1) \times 3n$, in other words with dimensions $(2k+2) \times 3n$. This board can be split into two parts: a $2k \times 3n$ board on the top, and a $2 \times 3n$ board on the bottom:

			...	
			...	
	⋮			
			...	

			...	
			...	

By the inductive hypothesis, the top part with dimensions $2k \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. By $Q(1)$, the bottom part with dimensions $2 \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes. Putting these two coverings together we see that the whole board with dimensions $2(k+1) \times 3n$ can be completely covered with L-shaped trominoes, [as was to be shown.] \square

3.35 Exercise 35

Let m and n be any integers that are greater than or equal to 1.

3.35.1 (a)

Prove that a necessary condition for an $m \times n$ checkerboard to be completely coverable by L-shaped trominoes is that mn be divisible by 3.

Proof. Assume an $m \times n$ checkerboard is completely coverable by L-shaped trominoes. [We want to show that mn is divisible by 3.]

Since the board is coverable by L-shaped trominoes, there exists an integer $k \geq 1$ such that the board is covered with k L-shaped trominoes. Since each tromino has 3 squares, and the trominoes do not overlap, the total number of squares covered by the covering is $3k$.

Since the trominoes cover the whole board, and since the whole board has mn squares, $mn = 3k$. So by definition of divisibility, mn is divisible by 3. \square

3.35.2 (b)

Prove that having mn be divisible by 3 is not a sufficient condition for an $m \times n$ checkerboard to be completely coverable by L-shaped trominoes.

Hint: Consider a 3×5 checkerboard, and refer to the hint for Exercise 32. Figure out a way to place six checkmarks in squares so that no two of the squares that contain checkmarks can be covered by the same tromino.

Proof. (following the Hint)

Consider the 3×5 checkerboard below:

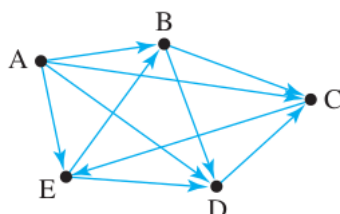
✓		✓		✓
✓		✓		✓

No L-shaped tromino can cover two of the checkmarked squares. So we need at least 6 trominoes to cover the checkmarked squares. However this gives us $6 \cdot 3 = 18$ squares, exceeding the 15 squares of the board. Therefore this covering is impossible.

Let $m = 5, n = 3$. Since $3 \cdot 5 = 15$ is divisible by 3 and the board is not coverable by L-shaped trominoes, we conclude that having mn be divisible by 3 is not a sufficient condition for the $m \times n$ board to be coverable by L-shaped trominoes. \square

3.36 Exercise 36

In a round-robin tournament each team plays every other team exactly once with ties not allowed. If the teams are labeled T_1, T_2, \dots, T_n , then the outcome of such a tournament can be represented by a directed graph, in which the teams are represented as dots and an arrow is drawn from one dot to another if, and only if, the following team represented by the first dot beats the team represented by the second dot. For example, the following directed graph shows one outcome of a round-robin tournament involving five teams, A, B, C, D, and E.



Use mathematical induction to show that in any round-robin tournament involving n teams, where $n \geq 2$, it is possible to label the teams T_1, T_2, \dots, T_n so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$. (For instance, one such labeling in the example above is $T_1 = A, T_2 = B, T_3 = C, T_4 = E, T_5 = D$.) (*Hint:* Given $k+1$ teams, pick one, say T' , and apply the inductive hypothesis to the remaining teams to obtain an ordering T_1, T_2, \dots, T_k . Consider three cases: T' beats T_1 , T' loses to the first m teams (where $1 \leq m \leq k-1$) and beats the $(m+1)$ st team, and T' loses to all the other teams.)

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be “in any round-robin tournament involving n teams, it is possible to label the teams T_1, T_2, \dots, T_n so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$.”.

Show that $P(2)$ is true: In a round-robin tournament with two teams A, B , either A beats B , in which case label $T_1 = A$ and $T_2 = B$, or B beats A , in which case label $T_1 = B$ and $T_2 = A$. So in both cases T_1 beats T_2 . So $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true: Suppose $k \geq 2$ is any integer such that $P(k)$ is true. So in any round-robin tournament involving k teams, it is possible to label the teams T_1, T_2, \dots, T_k so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, k-1$. $\leftarrow P(k)$ inductive hypothesis

[We want to show that in any round-robin tournament involving $k+1$ teams, it is possible to label the teams S_1, S_2, \dots, S_{k+1} so that S_i beats S_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$.] $\leftarrow P(k+1)$

Given $k+1$ teams, pick one, say X . By the inductive hypothesis applied to the remaining k teams, there exists an ordering T_1, T_2, \dots, T_k so that T_i beats T_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, k-1$.

Case 1: X beats T_1 . Then label the $k+1$ teams as follows: $S_1 = X, S_2 = T_1, S_3 = T_2, \dots, S_{k+1} = T_k$. Now S_i beats S_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, [as was to be shown.]

Case 2: There exists an integer m where $1 \leq m \leq k-1$ such that X loses to T_1, T_2, \dots, T_m and beats T_{m+1} . Then label the $k+1$ teams as follows: $S_1 = T_1, \dots, S_m = T_m, S_{m+1} = X, S_{m+2} = T_{m+1}, \dots, S_{k+1} = T_k$. Now S_i beats S_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, [as was to be shown.]

Case 3: X loses to all the other teams. Then label the $k+1$ teams as follows: $S_1 = T_1, S_2 = T_2, \dots, S_k = T_k, S_{k+1} = X$. Now S_i beats S_{i+1} for all $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, [as was to be shown.] \square

3.37 Exercise 37

On the outside rim of a circular disk the integers from 1 through 30 are painted in random order. Show that no matter what this order is, there must be three successive integers whose sum is at least 45.

Hint: Use proof by contradiction. If the statement is false, then there exists some ordering of the integers from 1 to 30, say, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{30} , such that $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 < 45, x_2 + x_3 + x_4 < 45, \dots$, and $x_{30} + x_1 + x_2 < 45$. Evaluate the sum of all these inequalities using the fact that $\sum_{i=1}^{30} x_i = \sum_{i=1}^{30} i$ and Theorem 5.2.1.

Proof. (following the Hint)

Argue by contradiction. Assume the statement is false, then there exists some ordering of the integers from 1 to 30, say, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{30} , such that the following 30 inequalities are true:

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 < 45,$$

$$x_2 + x_3 + x_4 < 45,$$

$$x_3 + x_4 + x_5 < 45,$$

\vdots

$$x_{30} + x_1 + x_2 < 45.$$

Notice that for every i with $1 \leq i \leq 30$, the integer x_i occurs exactly 3 times total in all of the inequalities.

Therefore, adding up all these inequalities we get

$$3x_1 + 3x_2 + \dots + 3x_{30} < 45 \cdot 30 = 1350.$$

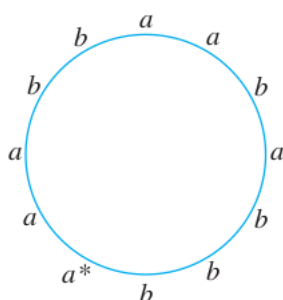
Since the integers x_1, \dots, x_{30} are an ordering of the integers $1, \dots, 30$, we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^{30} x_i = \sum_{i=1}^{30} i = \frac{30 \cdot 31}{2} = 465.$$

It follows that $3x_1 + \dots + 3x_{30} = 3 \sum_{i=1}^{30} x_i = 3 \cdot 465 = 1395$. But we also have $3x_1 + \dots + 3x_{30} < 1350$, so $1395 < 1350$, a contradiction. [Thus our supposition was false, and the original statement is true.] \square

3.38 Exercise 38

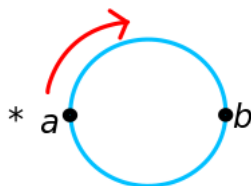
Suppose that n a 's and n b 's are distributed around the outside of a circle. Use mathematical induction to prove that for any integer $n \geq 1$, given any such arrangement, it is possible to find a starting point so that if you travel around the circle in a clockwise direction, the number of a 's you pass is never less than the number of b 's you have passed. For example, in the diagram shown below, you could start at the a with an asterisk.



Hint: Given $k + 1$ a 's and $k + 1$ b 's arrayed around the outside of the circle, there has to be at least one location where an a is followed by a b as one travels in the clockwise direction. In the inductive step, temporarily remove such an a and the b that follows it, and apply the inductive hypothesis.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be “given n a 's and n b 's distributed around the outside of a circle, it is possible to find a starting point so that if you travel around the circle in a clockwise direction, the number of a 's you pass is never less than the number of b 's you have passed.”.

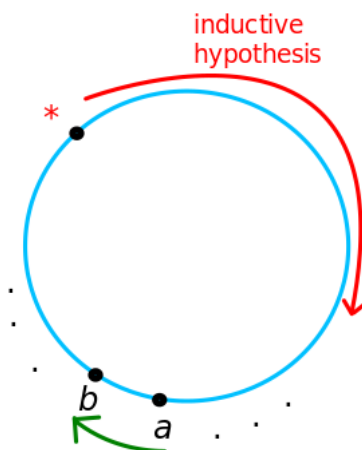
Show that $P(1)$ is true: Given one a and one b we can start from the a and go clockwise:



Then the number of a 's we pass will be 1 after we pass through the a , and the number of b 's we have passed at that point is 0, and 1 is not less than 0. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer k with $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true: Assume $P(k)$ is true. Assume we are given $k + 1$ a 's and $k + 1$ b 's arranged around the outside of a circle.

On the circle, there must be at least one a which is next to a b when we are going clockwise. Removing that a and b leaves us with k a 's and k b 's. By the inductive hypothesis, it is possible to find a starting point so that if you travel around the circle in a clockwise direction, the number of a 's you pass is never less than the number of b 's you have passed. Mark this starting point with an asterisk $*$:



Now if we add back the a and the b that we removed, start from the same point at $*$ and go clockwise, and go over the previously removed a and b , it is still true that the number of a 's you pass is never less than the number of b 's you have passed (because we will pass over the a first). This proves $P(k + 1)$, [as was to be shown.] \square

3.39 Exercise 39

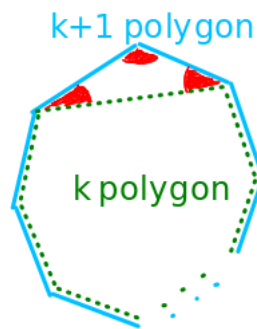
For a polygon to be convex means that given any two points on or inside the polygon, the line joining the points lies entirely inside the polygon. Use mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 3$, the angles of any n -sided convex polygon add up to $180(n - 2)$ degrees.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be: “the angles of any n -sided convex polygon add up to $180(n - 2)$ degrees.”

Show that $P(3)$ is true: $P(3)$ says “the angles of any triangle add up to $180(3 - 2) = 180$ degrees.” This is true by our knowledge from high school geometry.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 3$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true: Suppose k is an integer with $k \geq 3$ and suppose the angles of any k -sided convex polygon add up to $180(k - 2)$ degrees. *[We want to show that the angles of any $k + 1$ -sided convex polygon add up to $180(k + 1 - 2)$ degrees.]*

Consider any $k + 1$ -sided convex polygon. Choose any two adjacent edges and connect them with a third edge (see below).



Since the polygon is convex, this splits the $k + 1$ -sided polygon (cyan) into two parts: a k -sided polygon (green), and a triangle (with red angles). By the inductive hypothesis, the angles of the k -sided (green) polygon add up to $180(k - 2)$ degrees.

Now observe that the sum of the angles of the $k + 1$ -sided (cyan) polygon is equal to:

the sum of the angles of the k -sided polygon (green) = $180(k - 2)$

PLUS

the sum of the angles of the triangle (red) = 180

which equals $180(k - 2) + 180 = 180(k + 1 - 2)$ *[as was to be shown.]*

□

3.40 Exercise 40

3.40.1 (a)

Prove that in an 8×8 checkerboard with alternating black and white squares, if the squares in the top right and bottom left corners are removed the remaining board cannot be covered with dominoes. (*Hint:* Mathematical induction is not needed for this proof.)

Proof. Let us consider an 8×8 checkerboard with alternating black and white squares. Thus, the checkerboard has total 64 squares, with 32 black and 32 white in color. Now, if the squares in the top right and bottom left corners are removed, both the removed ones are either black or white in color. Therefore, out of the remaining 62 squares, 30 squares are of one color and 32 are of other. Now a domino always covers one black and one white square. Thus, the board with 30 of one color and 32 of other cannot be covered with dominoes. \square

3.40.2 (b)

Use mathematical induction to prove that for each positive integer n , if a $2n \times 2n$ checkerboard with alternating black and white squares has one white square and one black square removed anywhere on the board, the remaining squares can be covered with dominoes.

Hint: In the inductive step, imagine dividing a $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ checkerboard into two sections: a center checkerboard of dimensions $2k \times 2k$ and an outer perimeter of single, adjacent squares. Then examine three cases: case 1 is where both removed squares are in the central $2k \times 2k$ checkerboard, case 2 is where one removed square is in the central $2k \times 2k$ checkerboard and the other is on the perimeter, and case 3 is where both removed squares are on the perimeter.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be: “if a $2n \times 2n$ checkerboard with alternating black and white squares has one white square and one black square removed anywhere on the board, the remaining squares can be covered with dominoes.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: $P(1)$ says “if a 2×2 checkerboard with alternating black and white squares has one white square and one black square removed anywhere on the board, the remaining squares can be covered with dominoes.”

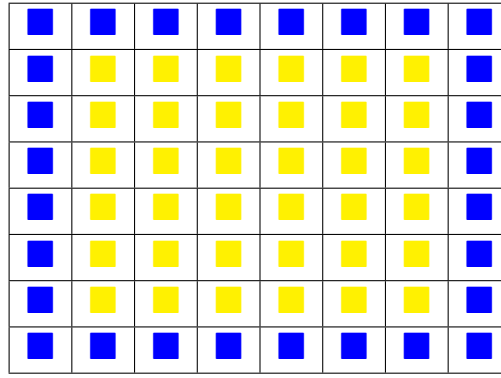
A 2×2 alternating B & W board looks like this:

 This means that, if one white square and one black square are removed, then either a row or a column is removed. So the remaining row or column can be covered with one domino. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true: Assume $k \geq 1$ is an integer such that if a $2k \times 2k$ checkerboard with alternating black and white squares has one white square and one black square removed anywhere on the board, the remaining squares can be covered with dominoes.

[We want to show that if a $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ checkerboard with alternating black and white squares has one white square and one black square removed anywhere on the board, the remaining squares can be covered with dominoes.]

(following the Hint) Split the $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ board into two sections: a $2k \times 2k$ center, and the remaining perimeter surrounding it. For example, if $k = 3$ then it looks like this (for demonstration purposes, I colored the center yellow and the perimeter blue):



Now consider the possibilities for the two removed squares.

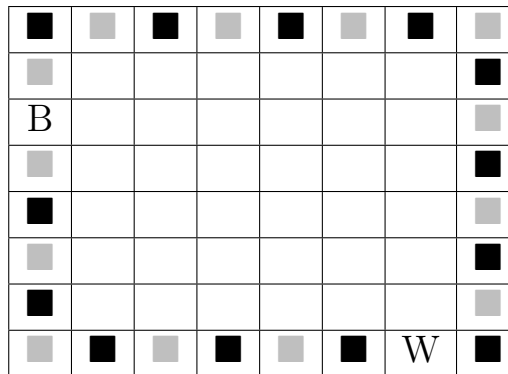
Case 1: both removed squares are in the center. Then by the inductive hypothesis, the $2k \times 2k$ center part with two squares removed (one white, one black) can be completely covered with dominoes.

The perimeter can also be covered with dominoes: the top and bottom rows each have length $2(k+1)$ consisting of $k+1$ white squares and $k+1$ black squares, so they can be covered with $k+1$ dominoes each, and the remaining sides each have length $2k$ with k white and k black squares, which can be covered with k dominoes each.

Therefore the whole $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ board (with one black, one white square removed) can be covered with dominoes, *[as was to be shown.]*

Case 2: both removed squares are on the perimeter. The center $2k \times 2k$ part can be covered with dominoes since it has nothing removed. Now since one black and one white square are removed from the perimeter, the two “paths” along the perimeter between the two removed squares must each have even lengths, each containing equal numbers of white and black squares.

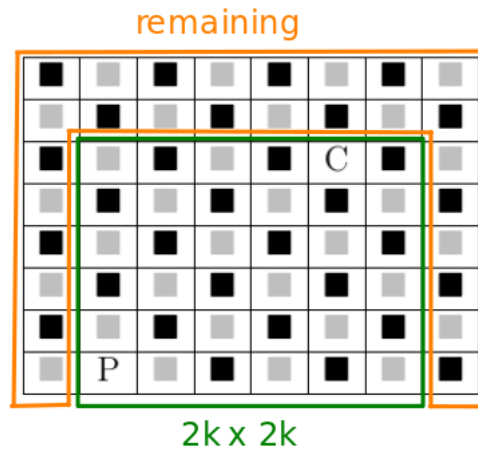
For example, in the following picture the removed squares are shown as “B” and “W” and the others are shown in black and white, except the center which is not shown:



So both of those “paths” can be covered by dominoes, since they have even lengths, no gaps, and equal numbers of white and black squares. Hence the whole $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ board can be covered, *[as was to be shown.]*

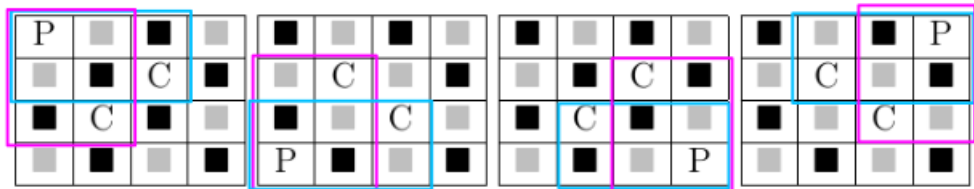
Case 3: one removed square is in the center, the other on the perimeter. Consider the two squares removed, say P is removed from the perimeter, and C is removed from the center.

If P and C are close enough to each other, so that they are both inside a $2k \times 2k$ square (not the center but some other $2k \times 2k$ square), then by the inductive hypothesis, that $2k \times 2k$ square can be covered with dominoes, and the remaining portion of the $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ square can also be covered with dominoes since it has equal numbers of white and black squares, and no gaps. Here is an example with $k = 3$:

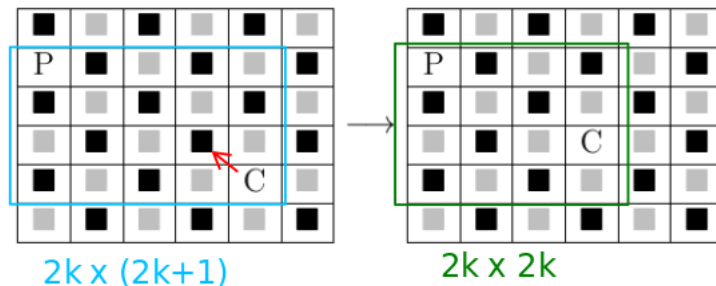


So we may assume that P and C do not fall into a $2k \times 2k$ square. In other words, we may assume that C is at the opposite end of the center from P , so that either horizontally or vertically, there are $2k - 1$ squares between P and C .

Since P and C have different colors, they cannot be on the same diagonal, so P and C always fit inside a $2k \times (2k + 1)$ or a $(2k + 1) \times 2k$ rectangle. Here are some examples for $k = 1$ to illustrate this. They always fit into either a 2×3 or a 3×2 rectangle:



We cannot apply the inductive hypothesis to this $2k \times (2k + 1)$ or $(2k + 1) \times 2k$ rectangle. So we have to move C closer to P by one diagonal, so that the horizontal or vertical distance is $2k - 2$ and hence they fall into a $2k \times 2k$ square. Here is an example for $k = 2$:



(Of course, depending on the position of P , we might have to move C in any one of the 4 diagonal directions. The picture above is only one example.)

Now we have to show that, this $2k \times (2k + 1)$ or $(2k + 1) \times 2k$ rectangle can be covered by dominoes, if and only if, the $2k \times 2k$ square obtained by moving C diagonally closer

to P can be covered by dominoes. (This is possible but the proof is annoying and complicated, so I'll skip it here.)

By the inductive hypothesis, any $2k \times 2k$ board with one white and one black square removed can be covered with dominoes. Thus, by the above “if and only if” equivalence, the $2k \times (2k+1)$ or $(2k+1) \times 2k$ board can also be covered by dominoes. The remaining portion of the $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ board can also be covered by dominoes, like before. So the whole $2(k+1) \times 2(k+1)$ board can be covered by dominoes, *[as was to be shown.]* \square

3.41 Exercise 41

A group of people are positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any other two people. Suppose that the group contains an odd number of people and each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor. Use mathematical induction to prove that at least one person does not receive a message from anyone. [This exercise is inspired by the article “Odd Pie Fights” by L. Carmony, *The Mathematics Teacher*, 72(1), 1979, 61–64.]

Hint: Let $P(n)$ be the sentence: If (1) $2n+1$ people are all positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any two other people, and if (2) each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor, then there is at least one person who does not receive a message from anyone. Use mathematical induction to prove that $P(n)$ is true for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. (following the Hint) Let $P(n)$ be the sentence: “If (1) $2n+1$ people are all positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any two other people, and if (2) each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor, then there is at least one person who does not receive a message from anyone.”

Show that $P(0)$ is true: $P(0)$ says: “If (1) $2 \cdot 0 + 1$ people are all positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any two other people, and if (2) each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor, then there is at least one person who does not receive a message from anyone.”

Now the group has only $2 \cdot 0 + 1 = 1$ person and this person does not receive a message from anyone. So $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$ if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Suppose $k \geq 0$ is an integer such that $P(k)$ is true: if (1) $2k+1$ people are all positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any two other people, and if (2) each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor, then there is at least one person who does not receive a message from anyone. *[We want to show $P(k+1)$ is true.]*

To prove $P(k+1)$, suppose (1) $2(k+1)+1$ people are all positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any two other people, and (2) each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor.

[Then we want to show there is at least one person who does not receive a message from anyone.]

[how to continue ??? Remove two people, use inductive hypothesis?] □

3.42 Exercise 42

Show that for any (positive) even integer n , it is possible to find a group of n people who are all positioned so that the distance between any two people is different from the distance between any other two people, so that each person sends a message to their nearest neighbor, and so that every person in the group receives a message from another person in the group.

Proof. ??? □

3.43 Exercise 43

Define a game as follows: You begin with an urn that contains a mixture of white and black balls, and during the game you have access to as many additional white and black balls as you might need. In each move you remove two balls from the urn without looking at their colors. If the balls are the same color, you put in one black ball. If the balls are different colors, you put the white ball back into the urn and keep the black ball out. Because each move reduces the number of balls in the urn by one, the game will end with a single ball in the urn. If you know how many white balls and how many black balls are initially in the urn, can you predict the color of the ball at the end of the game? [This exercise is based on one described in “Why correctness must be a mathematical concern” by E. W. Dijkstra, www.cs.utexas.edu/users/EWD/transcriptions/EWD07xx/EWD720.html.]

3.43.1 (a)

Map out all possibilities for playing the game starting with two balls in the urn, then three balls, and then four balls. For each case keep track of the number of white and black balls you start with and the color of the ball at the end of the game.

Hint:

Two Balls	Summary			
WW → B	W	B	W	B
WB → W	2	0	0	1
BB → B	1	1	1	0
	0	2	0	1

Proof. ??? □

3.43.2 (b)

Does the number of white balls seem to be predictive? Does the number of black balls seem to be predictive? Make a conjecture about the color of the ball at the end of the

game given the numbers of white and black balls at the beginning.

Hint: In all three cases when the urn initially contains an odd number of white balls, there is one white ball in the urn at the end of the game, and when the urn initially contains an even number of white balls, there is one black ball (i.e., zero white balls) in the urn at the end of the game.

Proof. ??? □

3.43.3 (c)

Use mathematical induction to prove the conjecture you made in part (b).

Proof. ??? □

3.44 Exercise 44

Let $P(n)$ be the following sentence: Given any graph G with n vertices satisfying the condition that every vertex of G has degree at most M , then the vertices of G can be colored with at most $M + 1$ colors in such a way that no two adjacent vertices have the same color. Use mathematical induction to prove this statement is true for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Hint: Given a graph G satisfying the given condition, form a new graph G' by deleting one vertex v of G and all the edges that are incident on v . Then apply the inductive hypothesis to G' .

Proof. **Show that $P(1)$ is true:** Given any graph G with 1 vertex satisfying the given condition, we can color this vertex with only 1 color (which is $\leq M + 1$) so that no two adjacent vertices have the same color (since there are no two adjacent vertices at all). So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true: Assume $P(k)$ is true, [we want to prove $P(k + 1)$ is true]. To prove $P(k + 1)$ assume G is any graph with $k + 1$ vertices with degree at most M . [We want to show that the vertices of G can be colored with at most $M + 1$ colors so that no two adjacent vertices have the same color.]

Form a new graph G' by deleting one vertex v of G and all the edges that are incident on v . Now G' has k vertices with degree at most M . By the inductive hypothesis we can color the vertices of G' with at most $M + 1$ colors so that no two adjacent vertices have the same color.

??? □

In order for a proof by mathematical induction to be valid, the basis statement must be true for $n = a$ and the argument of the inductive step must be correct for every integer $k \geq a$. In 45 and 46 find the mistakes in the “proofs” by mathematical induction.

3.45 Exercise 45

“Theorem:” For any integer $n \geq 1$, all the numbers in a set of n numbers are equal to each other.

“Proof (by mathematical induction): It is obviously true that all the numbers in a set consisting of just one number are equal to each other, so the basis step is true. For the inductive step, let $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k, a_{k+1}\}$ be any set of $k + 1$ numbers. Form two subsets each of size k :

$$B = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_k\} \text{ and } C = \{a_1, a_3, a_4, \dots, a_{k+1}\}.$$

(B consists of all the numbers in A except a_{k+1} , and C consists of all the numbers in A except a_2 .) By inductive hypothesis, all the numbers in B equal a_1 and all the numbers in C equal a_1 (since both sets have only k numbers). But every number in A is in B or C , so all the numbers in A equal a_1 ; hence all are equal to each other.”

Proof. The inductive step fails for going from $n = 1$ to $n = 2$, because when $k = 1$,

$$A = \{a_1, a_2\} \text{ and } B = \{a_1\}$$

and no set C can be defined to have the properties claimed for the C in the proof. The reason is that $C = \{a_1\} = B$, and so an element of A , namely a_2 , is not in either B or C .

Since the inductive step fails for going from $n = 1$ to $n = 2$, the truth of the following statement is never proved: “All the numbers in a set of two numbers are equal to each other.” This breaks the sequence of inductive steps, and so none of the statements for $n > 2$ is proved true either.

Here is an explanation for what happens in terms of the domino analogy. The first domino is tipped backward (the basis step is proved). Also, if any domino from the second onward tips backward (the inductive step works for $n \geq 2$). In this case, however, when the first domino is tipped backward, it does not tip the second domino backward. So only the first domino falls down; the rest remain standing. \square

3.46 Exercise 46

“Theorem:” For every integer $n \geq 1$, $3^n - 2$ is even.

“Proof (by mathematical induction): Suppose the theorem is true for an integer k , where $k \geq 1$. That is, suppose that $3^k - 2$ is even. We must show that $3^{k+1} - 2$ is even. Observe that $3^{k+1} - 2 = 3^k \cdot 3 - 2 = 3^k(1 + 2) - 2 = (3^k - 2) + 3^k \cdot 2$. Now $3^k - 2$ is even by inductive hypothesis and $3^k \cdot 2$ is even by inspection. Hence the sum of the two quantities is even (by Theorem 4.1.1). It follows that $3^{k+1} - 2$ is even, which is what we needed to show.”

Hint: Is the basis step true?

Proof. This proof starts at the inductive step, assuming $P(k)$ and proving $P(k + 1)$. However, it does not prove the basis step. In fact, the basis step is false: when $n = 1$, $3^n - 2 = 3^1 - 2 = 1$ is odd.

(Even if the basis step were true, the proof is still incomplete as it's missing the basis step.) \square

4 Exercise Set 5.4

4.1 Exercise 1

Suppose that a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$a_1 = 1, a_2 = 3, a_k = a_{k-2} + 2a_{k-1} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

Prove that a_n is odd for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ a_n is odd.”

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

Observe that $a_1 = 1$ and $a_2 = 3$ and both 1 and 3 are odd. Thus $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose a_i is odd for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that a_{k+1} is odd.

We know that $a_{k+1} = a_{k-1} + 2a_k$ by definition of a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots . Moreover, $k - 1$ is less than $k + 1$ and is greater than or equal to 1 (because $k \geq 2$). Thus, by inductive hypothesis, a_{k-1} is odd.

Also, every term of the sequence is an integer (being a sum of products of integers), and so $2a_k$ is even by definition of even.

It follows that a_{k+1} is the sum of an odd integer and an even integer and hence is odd by Theorem 4.1.2 (Exercise 30, Section 4.1). [*This is what was to be shown.*] \square

4.2 Exercise 2

Suppose that b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$b_1 = 4, b_2 = 12, b_k = b_{k-2} + b_{k-1} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

Prove that b_n is divisible by 4 for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ b_n is divisible by 4.”

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

Observe that $b_1 = 4$ and $b_2 = 12$ and both 4 and 12 are divisible by 4. Thus $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose b_i is divisible by 4 for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that b_{k+1} is divisible by 4.

We know that $b_{k+1} = b_{k-1} + b_k$ by definition of b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots . Moreover, $k-1$ and k are both less than or equal to k and are greater than or equal to 1 (because $k \geq 2$). Thus, by inductive hypothesis, b_{k-1} and b_k are divisible by 4. So by definition of divisible, $b_{k-1} = 4m$ and $b_k = 4n$ for some integers m, n .

It follows that $b_{k+1} = b_{k-1} + b_k = 4m + 4n = 4(m+n)$ is divisible by 4 because $m+n$ is an integer. [*This is what was to be shown.*] \square

4.3 Exercise 3

Suppose that c_0, c_1, c_2, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$c_0 = 2, c_1 = 2, c_2 = 6, c_k = 3c_{k-3} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

Prove that c_n is even for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ c_n is even.”

Show that $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

Observe that $c_0 = 2, c_1 = 2$ and $c_2 = 6$ and both 2 and 6 are even. Thus $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose c_i is even for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that c_{k+1} is even.

We have $c_{k+1} = 3c_{k-2}$ and $0 \leq k-2 \leq k$, therefore c_{k-2} is even by inductive hypothesis. So $c_{k-2} = 2m$ for some integer m . Then $c_{k+1} = 3c_{k-2} = 3(2m) = 2(3m)$ where $3m$ is an integer. Thus c_{k+1} is even. [*This is what was to be shown.*] \square

4.4 Exercise 4

Suppose that d_1, d_2, d_3, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$d_1 = \frac{9}{10}, d_2 = \frac{10}{11}, d_k = d_{k-1} \cdot d_{k-2} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

Prove that $0 < d_n \leq 1$ for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the inequality $d_n \leq 1$.

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

Observe that $d_1 = 9/10$ and $d_2 = 10/11$ and both $9/10 \leq 1$ and $10/11 \leq 1$. Thus $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose $d_i \leq 1$ for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $d_{k+1} \leq 1$.

Now, by definition of d_1, d_2, d_3, \dots , $d_{k+1} = d_k \cdot d_{k-1}$. Moreover $d_k \leq 1$ and $d_{k-1} \leq 1$ by inductive hypothesis because both $k-1$ and k are less than or equal to k .

Consequently, $d_{k+1} = d_k \cdot d_{k-1} \leq 1$ because if two positive numbers are each less than or equal to 1, then their product is less than or equal to 1.

[To see why this is so, note that if $0 < a \leq 1$ and $0 < b \leq 1$, then multiplying $a \leq 1$ by b gives $ab \leq b$, and since $b \leq 1$, then, by transitivity of order, $ab \leq 1$.] Thus the inductive step has been proved.

[Since we have proved both the basis step and the inductive step, we conclude that $d_n \leq 1$ for every integer $n \geq 1$.] \square

4.5 Exercise 5

Suppose that e_0, e_1, e_2, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$e_0 = 12, e_1 = 29, e_k = 5e_{k-1} - 6e_{k-2} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 2.$$

Prove that $e_n = 5 \cdot 3^n + 7 \cdot 2^n$ for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation $e_n = 5 \cdot 3^n + 7 \cdot 2^n$.

Show that $P(0)$ and $P(1)$ are true:

We must show that $e_0 = 5 \cdot 3^0 + 7 \cdot 2^0$ and $e_1 = 5 \cdot 3^1 + 7 \cdot 2^1$. The left-hand side of the first equation is 12 (by definition of e_0, e_1, e_2, \dots), and its right-hand side is $5 \cdot 1 + 7 \cdot 1 = 12$ also. The left-hand side of the second equation is 29 (by definition of e_0, e_1, e_2, \dots), and its right-hand side is $5 \cdot 3 + 7 \cdot 2 = 29$ also. Thus $P(0)$ and $P(1)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is also true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$ and suppose that $e_i = 5 \cdot 3^i + 7 \cdot 2^i$ for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $e_{k+1} = 5 \cdot 3^{k+1} + 7 \cdot 2^{k+1}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
e_{k+1} &= 5e_k - 6e_{k-1} && \text{by definition of } e_0, e_1, e_2, \dots \\
&= 5(5 \cdot 3^k + 7 \cdot 2^k) - 6(5 \cdot 3^{k-1} + 7 \cdot 2^{k-1}) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
&= 25 \cdot 3^k + 35 \cdot 2^k - 30 \cdot 3^{k-1} - 42 \cdot 2^{k-1} && \text{by distributing} \\
&= 25 \cdot 3^k + 35 \cdot 2^k - 10 \cdot 3 \cdot 3^{k-1} - 21 \cdot 2 \cdot 2^{k-1} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= 25 \cdot 3^k + 35 \cdot 2^k - 10 \cdot 3^k - 21 \cdot 2^k && \text{by laws of exponents} \\
&= 15 \cdot 3^k + 14 \cdot 2^k && \text{by combining like terms} \\
&= 5 \cdot 3 \cdot 3^k + 7 \cdot 2 \cdot 2^k && \text{by algebra} \\
&= 5 \cdot 3^{k+1} + 7 \cdot 2^{k+1} && \text{by laws of exponents}
\end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.6 Exercise 6

Suppose that f_0, f_1, f_2, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$f_0 = 5, f_1 = 16, f_k = 7f_{k-1} - 10f_{k-2} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 2.$$

Prove that $f_n = 3 \cdot 2^n + 2 \cdot 5^n$ for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation $f_n = 3 \cdot 2^n + 2 \cdot 5^n$.

Show that $P(0)$ and $P(1)$ are true:

We must show that $f_0 = 3 \cdot 2^0 + 2 \cdot 5^0$ and $f_1 = 3 \cdot 2^1 + 2 \cdot 5^1$. The left-hand side of the first equation is 5 (by definition of f_0, f_1, f_2, \dots), and its right-hand side is $3 \cdot 2^0 + 2 \cdot 5^0 = 3 + 2 = 5$ also. The left-hand side of the second equation is 16 (by definition of f_0, f_1, f_2, \dots), and its right-hand side is $3 \cdot 2^1 + 2 \cdot 5^1 = 6 + 10 = 16$ also. Thus $P(0)$ and $P(1)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is also true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$ and suppose that $f_i = 3 \cdot 2^i + 2 \cdot 5^i$ for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $f_{k+1} = 3 \cdot 2^{k+1} + 2 \cdot 5^{k+1}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
f_{k+1} &= 7f_k - 10f_{k-1} && \text{by definition of } f_0, f_1, f_2, \dots \\
&= 7(3 \cdot 2^k + 2 \cdot 5^k) - 10(3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2 \cdot 5^{k-1}) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
&= 21 \cdot 2^k + 14 \cdot 5^k - 30 \cdot 2^{k-1} - 20 \cdot 5^{k-1} && \text{by distributing} \\
&= 21 \cdot 2^k + 14 \cdot 5^k - 15 \cdot 2 \cdot 2^{k-1} - 4 \cdot 5 \cdot 5^{k-1} && \text{by algebra} \\
&= 21 \cdot 2^k + 14 \cdot 5^k - 15 \cdot 2^k - 4 \cdot 5^k && \text{by laws of exponents} \\
&= 6 \cdot 2^k + 10 \cdot 5^k && \text{by combining like terms} \\
&= 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 2^k + 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 5^k && \text{by algebra} \\
&= 3 \cdot 2^{k+1} + 2 \cdot 5^{k+1} && \text{by laws of exponents}
\end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.7 Exercise 7

Suppose that g_1, g_2, g_3, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$g_1 = 3, g_2 = 5, g_k = 3g_{k-1} - 2g_{k-2} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

Prove that $g_n = 2^n + 1$ for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equation $g_n = 2^n + 1$.

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

We must show that $g_1 = 2^1 + 1$ and $g_2 = 2^2 + 1$. The left-hand side of the first equation is 3 (by definition of g_1, g_2, g_3, \dots), and its right-hand side is $2^1 + 1 = 2 + 1 = 3$ also. The left-hand side of the second equation is 5 (by definition of g_1, g_2, g_3, \dots), and its right-hand side is $2^2 + 1 = 4 + 1 = 5$ also. Thus $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is also true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$ and suppose that $g_i = 2^i + 1$ for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $g_{k+1} = 2^{k+1} + 1$. Now

$$\begin{aligned} g_{k+1} &= 3g_k - 2g_{k-1} && \text{by definition of } g_1, g_2, g_3, \dots \\ &= 3(2^k + 1) - 2(2^{k-1} + 1) && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\ &= 3 \cdot 2^k + 3 - 2^k - 2 && \text{by distributing} \\ &= 2 \cdot 2^k + 1 && \text{by combining like terms} \\ &= 2^{k+1} + 1 && \text{by laws of exponents} \end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.8 Exercise 8

Suppose that h_0, h_1, h_2, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$h_0 = 1, h_1 = 1, h_2 = 2, h_k = h_{k-1} + h_{k-2} + h_{k-3} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

4.8.1 (a)

Prove that $h_n \leq 3^n$ for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the inequality $h_n \leq 3^n$.

Show that $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

We must show that $h_0 \leq 3^0, h_1 \leq 3^1$ and $h_2 \leq 3^2$. The first inequality is $h_0 = 1 \leq 1 = 3^0$ which is true since $1 \leq 1$. The second inequality is $h_1 = 1 \leq 3 = 3^1$ which is true since $1 \leq 3$. The third inequality is $h_2 = 2 \leq 9 = 3^2$ which is true since $2 \leq 9$. Thus $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is also true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$ and suppose that $h_i \leq 3^i$ for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $h_{k+1} \leq 3^{k+1}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 h_{k+1} &= h_k + h_{k-1} + h_{k-2} && \text{by definition of } h_0, h_1, h_2, \dots \\
 &\leq 3^k + 3^{k-1} + 3^{k-2} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &\leq 3^k + 3^k + 3^k && \text{because } 3^{k-1} \leq 3^k \text{ and } 3^{k-2} \leq 3^k \\
 &= 3 \cdot 3^k && \text{by combining like terms} \\
 &= 3^{k+1} && \text{by laws of exponents}
 \end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.8.2 (b)

Suppose that s is any real number such that $s^3 \geq s^2 + s + 1$. (This implies that $2 > s > 1.83$.) Prove that $h_n \leq s^n$ for every integer $n \geq 2$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the inequality $h_n \leq s^n$.

Show that $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

We must show that $h_0 \leq s^0, h_1 \leq s^1$ and $h_2 \leq s^2$. The first inequality is $h_0 = 1 \leq 1 = s^0$ which is true since $1 \leq 1$. The second inequality is $h_1 = 1 \leq s^1$ which is true since $1 \leq 1.83 < s$. The third inequality is $h_2 = 2 \leq s^2$ which is true since $2 \leq (1.83)^2 = 3.3489 < s^2$. Thus $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is also true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$ and suppose that $h_i \leq s^i$ for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $h_{k+1} \leq s^{k+1}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 h_{k+1} &= h_k + h_{k-1} + h_{k-2} && \text{by definition of } h_0, h_1, h_2, \dots \\
 &\leq s^k + s^{k-1} + s^{k-2} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= s^{k-2}(s^2 + s + 1) && \text{by factoring } s^{k-2} \\
 &\leq s^{k-2}(s^3) && \text{by the fact } s^3 \geq s^2 + s + 1 \\
 &= s^{k+1} && \text{by laws of exponents}
 \end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.9 Exercise 9

Define a sequence a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots as follows:

$$a_1 = 1, a_2 = 3, a_k = a_{k-1} + a_{k-2} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

(This sequence is known as the Lucas sequence.) Use strong mathematical induction to prove that $a_n \leq (7/4)^n$ for every integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the inequality $a_n \leq (7/4)^n$.

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true:

We must show that $a_1 \leq (7/4)^1$ and $a_2 \leq (7/4)^2$. The first inequality is $a_1 = 1 \leq 7/4 = (7/4)^1$ which is true since $1 \leq 7/4$. The second inequality is $a_2 = 3 \leq 3.0625 = 49/16 = (7/4)^2$ which is true since $3 \leq 3.0625$. Thus $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k+1)$ is also true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$ and suppose that $a_i \leq (7/4)^i$ for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. [This is the inductive hypothesis.] We must show that $a_{k+1} \leq (7/4)^{k+1}$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_{k+1} &= a_k + a_{k-1} && \text{by definition of } a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots \\
 &\leq (7/4)^k + (7/4)^{k-1} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= (7/4)^{k-1}(7/4 + 1) && \text{by factoring } (7/4)^{k-1} \\
 &= (7/4)^{k-1}(11/4) && \text{by algebra} \\
 &\leq (7/4)^{k-1}(49/16) && \text{because } 11/4 \leq 49/16 \\
 &= (7/4)^{k-1}(7/4)^2 && \text{by rewriting} \\
 &= (7/4)^{k+1} && \text{by laws of exponents}
 \end{aligned}$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.10 Exercise 10

The introductory example solved with ordinary mathematical induction in Section 5.3 can also be solved using strong mathematical induction. Let $P(n)$ be “any $n\text{¢}$ can be obtained using a combination of 3¢ and 5¢ coins.” Use strong mathematical induction to prove that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 8$.

Hint: In the basis step, show that $P(8)$, $P(9)$, and $P(10)$ are all true. For the inductive step, note that $k+1 = [(k+1) - 3] + 3$, and if $k \geq 10$, then $(k+1) - 3 \geq 8$.

Proof. **Show that $P(8)$, $P(9)$ and $P(10)$ are true:** $8\text{¢} = 3\text{¢} + 5\text{¢}$ so $P(8)$ is true. $9\text{¢} = 3\text{¢} + 3\text{¢} + 3\text{¢}$ so $P(9)$ is true. $10\text{¢} = 5\text{¢} + 5\text{¢}$ so $P(10)$ is true.

Show that for every $k \geq 10$, if $P(i)$ is true for every i with $8 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Notice that $k-2 \geq 8$, so by the inductive hypothesis, $(k-2)\text{¢}$ can be obtained using a combination of 3¢ and 5¢ coins. Notice that $k+1 = (k-2) + 3$. So $(k+1)\text{¢}$ can be obtained from $(k-2)\text{¢}$ by adding one more 3¢ coin. Therefore $(k+1)\text{¢}$ can be obtained using a combination of 3¢ and 5¢ coins, [as was to be shown.] □

4.11 Exercise 11

You begin solving a jigsaw puzzle by finding two pieces that match and fitting them together. Every subsequent step of the solution consists of fitting together two blocks,

each of which is made up of one or more pieces that have previously been assembled. Use strong mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, the number of steps required to put together all n pieces of a jigsaw puzzle is $n - 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “A jigsaw puzzle consisting of n pieces takes $n - 1$ steps to put together.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: A jigsaw puzzle consisting of just one piece does not take any steps to put together. Hence it is correct to say that it takes zero steps to put together.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$ and suppose that for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, a jigsaw puzzle consisting of i pieces takes $i - 1$ steps to put together. [*This is the inductive hypothesis.*] We must show that a jigsaw puzzle consisting of $k + 1$ pieces takes k steps to put together.

Consider assembling a jigsaw puzzle consisting of $k + 1$ pieces. The last step involves fitting together two blocks. Suppose one of the blocks consists of r pieces and the other consists of s pieces. Then $r + s = k + 1$, and $1 \leq r \leq k$ and $1 \leq s \leq k$. Thus, by the inductive hypothesis, the numbers of steps required to assemble the blocks are $r - 1$ and $s - 1$, respectively. Then the total number of steps required to assemble the puzzle is $(r - 1) + (s - 1) + 1 = (r + s) - 1 = (k + 1) - 1 = k$ [*as was to be shown*]. \square

4.12 Exercise 12

The sides of a circular track contain a sequence of n cans of gasoline. For each integer $n \geq 1$, the total amount in the cans is sufficient to enable a certain car to make one complete circuit of the track. In addition, all the gasoline could fit into the car’s gas tank at one time. Use mathematical induction to prove that it is possible to find an initial location for placing the car so that it will be able to traverse the entire track by using the various amounts of gasoline in the cans that it encounters along the way.

Hint: For any collection of cans, at least one must contain enough gasoline to enable the car to get to the next can. (Why?) Imagine taking all the gasoline from that can and pouring it into the can that immediately proceeds it in the direction of travel around the track. (*I think “precedes” here is a typo in the book, I think they meant “proceeds” so I changed it.*)

Proof. Let $P(n)$ be the statement: “It is possible to find an initial location for placing the car so that it will be able to traverse the entire track by using the various amounts of gasoline in the n cans that it encounters along the way.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: In this case there is only one gasoline can. Let the initial location for the car to be this can. By the given assumption in the problem statement, the total amount in this can is sufficient to enable the car to make one complete circuit of the track. Therefore $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume $k \geq 1$ is any integer and assume $P(k)$ is true. Assume we are considering a circuit with $k + 1$ gasoline cans. For convenience, label them c_1, c_2, \dots, c_{k+1} in the direction of the car's movement, and label their gasoline amounts as g_1, g_2, \dots, g_{k+1} respectively.

So the problem tells us that $g_1 + g_2 + \dots + g_{k+1}$ is enough to allow the car make one complete track around the circuit.

Claim: For any collection of cans, at least one must contain enough gasoline to enable the car to get to the next can.

Proof of Claim. Argue by contradiction and assume that no can contains enough gasoline to enable the car to get to the next can. Then the total amount in the cans is insufficient to enable the car to make one complete circuit, which is a contradiction to the fact given in the problem.

By the Claim, there exists a can, let's say c_1 , that contains enough gasoline g_1 to reach the next can c_2 in the direction of movement.

Consider the circuit with k gasoline cans obtained from the current track by combining the gasoline in c_1 and c_2 into c_1 . This is a circuit with k gasoline cans: we got rid of c_2 and now c_1 contains gasoline in the amount of $g_1 + g_2$. So the cans and their gasoline amounts are: $c_1 : g_1 + g_2, c_3 : g_3, c_4 : g_4, \dots, c_{k+1} : g_{k+1}$.

By the inductive hypothesis, there is an initial location in this k can circuit, say at can c_i , that allows the car to make one complete track around this circuit.

Now we want to show that the same starting point, c_i , also works for our $k + 1$ can circuit.

Let the car start at c_i . Then the car is able to travel to c_1 because the cans from c_i up to c_1 have enough gasoline to allow the car to reach c_1 (by the inductive hypothesis). Some of this gasoline might be left over. When the car reaches c_1 , say the remaining gasoline in the tank is g . From this point on, we will talk about the two different circuit runs in parallel.

In the k can circuit, now the car fuels up at can c_1 and receives $g_1 + g_2$ amount of gasoline. So $g + (g_1 + g_2)$ is enough to reach from c_1 to the next can, which is c_3 (by the inductive hypothesis).

To explain this a little bit better, say the exact amount of gasoline required to go from c_1 to c_2 is G_1 , and the exact amount of gasoline required to go from c_2 to c_3 is G_2 . So by the paragraph above, $g + g_1 + g_2 \geq G_1 + G_2$. And then the car reaches c_3 with $g + g_1 + g_2 - G_1 - G_2$ left in the tank, which is enough to complete the circuit back to c_i (by the inductive hypothesis).

In the $k + 1$ can circuit, now the car fuels up at can c_1 and receives g_1 amount of gasoline. Now there is $g + g_1$ in the tank. We know that g_1 is enough to go from c_1 to c_2 (by the property of c_1), so $g_1 \geq G_1$. Therefore the car reaches c_2 no problem, because $g + g_1 \geq G_1$. (Notice that if $g_1 \geq G_1$ weren't true, then the car would have to rely on the previous leftover g to make up for the difference to reach c_2 , which might not have

been enough, since g might be 0.)

Continuing on the $k + 1$ circuit: when the car reaches c_2 there is $g + g_1 - G_1$ left in the tank. Now the car fuels up at c_2 and receives g_2 from c_2 , so there is $g + g_1 - G_1 + g_2$ in the tank.

From the k can circuit we know $g + g_1 + g_2 \geq G_1 + G_2$ which implies $g + g_1 + g_2 - G_1 \geq G_2$. The left hand side is the amount the tank has at c_2 in the $k + 1$ can circuit. So this amount $g + g_1 + g_2 - G_1$ is enough from c_2 to reach c_3 .

When the car reaches c_3 in the $k + 1$ can circuit, there is $g + g_1 + g_2 - G_1 - G_2$ left in the tank, which is exactly the same as the k can circuit, so it's enough to complete the track back to c_i .

This proves $P(k + 1)$, [as was to be shown.] □

4.13 Exercise 13

Use strong mathematical induction to prove the existence part of the unique factorization of integers theorem (Theorem 4.4.5). In other words, prove that every integer greater than 1 is either a prime number or a product of prime numbers.

Proof. Sketch of proof: Given any integer $k > 1$, either k is prime or k is a product of two smaller positive integers, each greater than 1. In the former case, the property is true. In the latter case, the inductive hypothesis ensures that both factors of k are products of primes and hence that k is also a product of primes.

Let the property $P(n)$ be: “There exist a positive integer k , distinct prime numbers p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k , and positive integers e_1, e_2, \dots, e_k such that $n = p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} p_3^{e_3} \cdots p_k^{e_k}$.”

Show that $P(2)$ is true: We have $2 = 2^1$ so we can choose $k = 1$, $p_1 = 2$ and $e_1 = 1$. So $P(2)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $n > 1$ if $P(i)$ is true for all integers i with $1 < i \leq n$ then $P(n + 1)$ is true:

Assume $n > 1$ is any integer and assume that for every integer i with $1 < i \leq n$ there exist a positive integer k_i , distinct prime numbers $p_{1_i}, p_{2_i}, \dots, p_{k_i}$ and positive integers $e_{1_i}, e_{2_i}, \dots, e_{k_i}$ such that $i = p_{1_i}^{e_{1_i}} p_{2_i}^{e_{2_i}} p_{3_i}^{e_{3_i}} \cdots p_{k_i}^{e_{k_i}}$.

[We want to show that there exist a positive integer k , distinct prime numbers p_1, \dots, p_k , and positive integers e_1, e_2, \dots, e_k such that $n + 1 = p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} p_3^{e_3} \cdots p_k^{e_k}$.]

Case 1: $n + 1$ is prime. Then $n + 1 = (n + 1)^1$ so we can take $k = 1$, $p_1 = n + 1$, $e_1 = 1$ which proves $P(n + 1)$ is true.

Case 2: $n + 1$ is composite. By definition of composite $n + 1 = ab$ for integers a, b with $1 < a < n + 1$ and $1 < b < n + 1$.

By the inductive hypothesis $a = q_1^{f_1} q_2^{f_2} \cdots q_x^{f_x}$ and $b = r_1^{g_1} r_2^{g_2} \cdots r_y^{g_y}$ for some positive integers $x, y, f_1, \dots, f_x, g_1, \dots, g_y$ and some primes $q_1, \dots, q_x, r_1, \dots, r_y$. The primes q_1, \dots, q_x are distinct among themselves, and the primes r_1, \dots, r_y are distinct among themselves.

Then $n + 1 = ab = q_1^{f_1} q_2^{f_2} \cdots q_x^{f_x} \cdot r_1^{g_1} r_2^{g_2} \cdots r_y^{g_y}$.

Now some of the primes q_i might be among the primes r_j . If so, we can combine the powers in this product. For example if $q_i = r_j$ then we can let $s_i = q_i$, $h_i = f_i + g_j$ and combine the product $q_i^{f_i} \cdot r_j^{g_j} = s_i^{f_i+g_j} = s_i^{h_i}$.

This way, we obtain distinct primes s_1, \dots, s_z for some positive integer z , and positive integers h_1, \dots, h_z such that

$$n + 1 = ab = s_1^{h_1} \cdots s_z^{h_z}$$

which proves $P(n + 1)$, [as was to be shown.] □

4.14 Exercise 14

Any product of two or more integers is a result of successive multiplications of two integers at a time. For instance, here are a few of the ways in which a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4 might be computed: $(a_1 a_2)(a_3 a_4)$ or $((a_1 a_2) a_3) a_4$ or $a_1((a_2 a_3) a_4)$. Use strong mathematical induction to prove that any product of two or more odd integers is odd.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “Any product of n odd integers is odd.”

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true: $P(1)$ is true because any product of one odd integer is odd. $P(2)$ is true because any product of two odd integers is odd (Exercise 20, Section 4.2).

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose that for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, any product of i odd integers is odd. [*Inductive hypothesis*]

Consider any product M of $k + 1$ odd integers. Some multiplication is the final one that is used to obtain M . Thus, there are integers A and B such that $M = AB$, and each of A and B is a product of between 1 and k odd integers. (For instance, if $M = ((a_1 a_2) a_3) a_4$, then $A = (a_1 a_2) a_3$ and $B = a_4$.) By inductive hypothesis, each of A and B is odd, and, as in the basis step, we know that any product of two odd integers is odd. Hence $M = AB$ is odd. □

4.15 Exercise 15

Define the “sum” of one integer to be that integer, and use strong mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, any sum of n even integers is even.

Proof. Let $P(n)$ be the statement “any sum of n even integers is even.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: The sum of one even integer is equal to itself, which is even. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$ if $P(i)$ is true for all integers i with $1 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume $k \geq 1$ is an integer such that any sum of i even integers is even, for any integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. [We want to show that any sum of $k + 1$ even integers is even.]

Consider any sum S of $k + 1$ even integers. Some addition is the final one that is used to obtain S . Thus, there are integers A and B such that $S = A + B$, and each of A and B is a sum of between 1 and k even integers. (For instance, if $S = ((a_1 + a_2) + a_3) + a_4$, then $A = (a_1 + a_2) + a_3$ and $B = a_4$.) By inductive hypothesis, each of A and B is even, and, we know that any sum of two even integers is even. Hence $S = A + B$ is even, [as was to be shown.] \square

4.16 Exercise 16

Use strong mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 2$, if n is even, then any sum of n odd integers is even, and if n is odd, then any sum of n odd integers is odd.

Hint: Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “If n is even, then any sum of n odd integers is even, and if n is odd, then any sum of n odd integers is odd.” For the inductive step, consider any sum S of $k + 1$ odd integers. Some addition is the final one that is used to obtain S . Thus, there are integers A and B such that $S = A + B$, and A is a sum of r odd integers and B is a sum of $(k + 1) - r$ odd integers. Consider the two cases where $k + 1$ is even and $k + 1$ is odd, and for each case consider the two subcases where r is even and where r is odd.

Proof. (following the Hint)

Show that $P(2)$ is true: 2 is even, so we need to show that any sum of 2 odd integers is even. Assume m, n are two odd integers. [We want to show $m + n$ is even.] By definition of odd $m = 2a + 1$ and $n = 2b + 1$ for some integers a, b . Then $m + n = 2a + 1 + 2b + 1 = 2(a + b + 1)$ where $a + b + 1$ is an integer (because a and b are integers). So by definition of even, $m + n$ is even. This proves $P(2)$.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for all integers i with $2 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume $k \geq 2$ is any integer such that for all i with $2 \leq i \leq k$, if i is even then any sum of i odd integers is even, and if i is odd then any sum of i odd integers is odd.

[We want to show that if $k + 1$ is even, then any sum of $k + 1$ odd integers is even, and if $k + 1$ is odd, then any sum of $k + 1$ odd integers is odd.]

Consider any sum S of $k + 1$ odd integers. Some addition is the final one that is used to obtain S . Thus, there are integers A and B such that $S = A + B$, A is a sum of r odd integers and B is a sum of $(k + 1) - r$ odd integers.

Case 1: $k + 1$ is even. [We want to show that S is even.]

Subcase 1.1: r is even. Then $(k + 1) - r$ is even. So both A and B are sums of an even number of odd integers. By inductive hypothesis A and B are both even. Therefore $S = A + B$ is even (a sum of two even integers), [as was to be shown.]

Subcase 1.2: r is odd. Then $(k + 1) - r$ is odd. So both A and B are sums of an odd number of odd integers. By inductive hypothesis A and B are both odd. Therefore $S = A + B$ is even (a sum of two odd integers), [as was to be shown.]

Case 2: $k + 1$ is odd. [We want to show that S is odd.]

Subcase 2.1: r is even. Then $(k + 1) - r$ is odd. So A is a sum of an even number of odd integers, and B is a sum of an odd number of odd integers. By inductive hypothesis A is even and B is odd. Therefore $S = A + B$ is odd (a sum of one even and one odd integers), [as was to be shown.]

Subcase 2.2: r is odd. Then $(k + 1) - r$ is even. So A is a sum of an odd number of odd integers, and B is a sum of an even number of odd integers. By inductive hypothesis A is odd and B is even. Therefore $S = A + B$ is odd (a sum of one odd and one even integers), [as was to be shown.] \square

4.17 Exercise 17

Compute $4^1, 4^2, 4^3, 4^4, 4^5, 4^6, 4^7$, and 4^8 . Make a conjecture about the units digit of 4^n where n is a positive integer. Use strong mathematical induction to prove your conjecture.

Proof. $4^1 = 4, 4^2 = 16, 4^3 = 64, 4^4 = 256, 4^5 = 1024, 4^6 = 4096, 4^7 = 16384, 4^8 = 65536$.

Conjecture: The units digit of 4^n equals 4 if n is odd and equals 6 if n is even, for all $n \geq 1$.

Proof by strong mathematical induction: Let $P(n)$ be the statement: “The units digit of 4^n is 4 if n is odd, 6 if n is even.”

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true: When $n = 1$, $4^n = 4^1 = 4$, so the units digit is 4. When $n = 2$, $4^n = 4^2 = 16$, so the units digit is 6. Therefore $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for all integers $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for all integers i with $1 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose that for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, the units digit of 4^i equals 4 if i is odd and equals 6 if i is even. [Inductive hypothesis] We must show that the units digit of 4^{k+1} equals 4 if $k + 1$ is odd and equals 6 if $k + 1$ is even.

Case 1 ($k + 1$ is odd): In this case, k is even, and so, by inductive hypothesis, the units digit of 4^k is 6. Thus $4^k = 10q + 6$ for some nonnegative integer q . It follows that $4^{k+1} = 4^k \cdot 4 = (10q + 6) \cdot 4 = 40q + 24 = 10(4q + 2) + 4$. Thus, the units digit of 4^{k+1} is 4.

Case 2 ($k + 1$ is even): In this case, k is odd, and so, by inductive hypothesis, the units digit of 4^k is 4. Thus $4^k = 10q + 4$ for some nonnegative integer q . It follows that $4^{k+1} = 4^k \cdot 4 = (10q + 4) \cdot 4 = 40q + 16 = 10(4q + 1) + 6$. Thus, the units digit of 4^{k+1} is 6.

Conclusion: Because cases 1 and 2 are the only possibilities and 4^{k+1} has one of the required forms in each case, we have shown that $P(k+1)$ is true. \square

4.18 Exercise 18

Compute $9^0, 9^1, 9^2, 9^3, 9^4$, and 9^5 . Make a conjecture about the units digit of 9^n where n is a positive integer. Use strong mathematical induction to prove your conjecture.

Proof. $9^0 = 1, 9^1 = 9, 9^2 = 81, 9^3 = 729, 9^4 = 6561, 9^5 = 59049$.

Conjecture: The units digit of 9^n equals 9 if n is odd and equals 1 if n is even, for $n \geq 0$.

Proof by strong mathematical induction: Let $P(n)$ be the statement: “The units digit of 9^n is 9 if n is odd, 1 if n is even.”

Show that $P(0)$ and $P(1)$ are true: When $n = 0$, $9^n = 9^0 = 1$, so the units digit is 1. When $n = 1$, $9^n = 9^1 = 9$, so the units digit is 9. Therefore $P(0)$ and $P(1)$ are true.

Show that for all integers $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for all integers i with $0 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose that for each integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, the units digit of 9^i equals 9 if i is odd and equals 1 if i is even. [*Inductive hypothesis*] We must show that the units digit of 9^{k+1} equals 9 if $k+1$ is odd and equals 1 if $k+1$ is even.

Case 1 ($k+1$ is odd): In this case, k is even, and so, by inductive hypothesis, the units digit of 9^k is 1. Thus $9^k = 10q + 1$ for some nonnegative integer q . It follows that $9^{k+1} = 9^k \cdot 9 = (10q + 1) \cdot 9 = 90q + 9 = 10(9q) + 9$. Thus, the units digit of 9^{k+1} is 9.

Case 2 ($k+1$ is even): In this case, k is odd, and so, by inductive hypothesis, the units digit of 9^k is 9. Thus $9^k = 10q + 9$ for some nonnegative integer q . It follows that $9^{k+1} = 9^k \cdot 9 = (10q + 9) \cdot 9 = 90q + 81 = 10(9q + 8) + 1$. Thus, the units digit of 9^{k+1} is 1.

Conclusion: Because cases 1 and 2 are the only possibilities and 9^{k+1} has one of the required forms in each case, we have shown that $P(k+1)$ is true. \square

4.19 Exercise 19

Suppose that a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$a_1 = 1, a_k = 2 \cdot a_{\lfloor k/2 \rfloor} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 2.$$

Prove that $a_n \leq n$ for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the inequality $a_n \leq n$. $\leftarrow P(n)$

We will show that $P(n)$ is true for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Show that $P(1)$ is true: $a_1 = 1$ and $1 \leq 1$. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i from 1 through k , then $P(k+1)$ is true: Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose that $a_i \leq i$ for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. \leftarrow inductive hypothesis

We must show that $a_{k+1} \leq k+1$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_{k+1} &= 2 \cdot a_{\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor} && \text{by definition of } a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots \\
 &\leq 2 \cdot \lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= \begin{cases} 2((k+1)/2) & \text{if } k \text{ is odd} \\ 2(k/2) & \text{if } k \text{ is even} \end{cases} && \text{by definition of floor} \\
 &= \begin{cases} k+1 & \text{if } k \text{ is odd} \\ k & \text{if } k \text{ is even} \end{cases} && \text{by algebra} \\
 &\leq k+1 && \text{because } k \leq k+1
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $a_{k+1} \leq k+1$ [as was to be shown]. □

4.20 Exercise 20

Suppose that b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots is a sequence defined as follows:

$$b_1 = 0, b_2 = 3, b_k = 5 \cdot b_{\lfloor k/2 \rfloor} + 6 \text{ for every integer } k \geq 3.$$

Prove that b_n is divisible by 3 for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the statement $3 \mid b_n$. $\leftarrow P(n)$

We will show that $P(n)$ is true for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Show that $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true: $b_1 = 0 = 3 \cdot 0$ and $b_2 = 3 = 3 \cdot 1$. So $3 \mid b_1$ and $3 \mid b_2$. So $P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 2$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i from 1 through k , then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 2$, and suppose that $3 \mid b_i$ for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$. \leftarrow inductive hypothesis

We must show that $3 \mid b_{k+1}$.

Case 1: k is even. Then $k = 2i$ for some integer i with $1 \leq i < k$, and $\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor (2i+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor i+1/2 \rfloor = i$. By the inductive hypothesis, $3 \mid b_i$. So $b_i = 3m$ for some integer m . Then

$$b_{k+1} = 5 \cdot b_{\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor} + 6 = 5 \cdot b_i + 6 = 5 \cdot (3m) + 6 = 3(5m+2)$$

so by definition of divides, $3 \mid b_{k+1}$, [as was to be shown.]

Case 2: k is odd. Then $k = 2i+1$ for some integer i with $1 \leq i < k$, and $\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor (2i+1+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor (2i+2)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor i+1 \rfloor = i+1$. Note that $i+1 \leq k$. By the inductive hypothesis, $3 \mid b_{i+1}$. So $b_{i+1} = 3m$ for some integer m . Then

$$b_{k+1} = 5 \cdot b_{\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor} + 6 = 5 \cdot b_{i+1} + 6 = 5 \cdot (3m) + 6 = 3(5m+2)$$

so by definition of divides, $3 \mid b_{k+1}$, [as was to be shown.] □

4.21 Exercise 21

Suppose that $c_0, c_1, c_2, c_3, \dots$ is a sequence defined as follows:

$$c_0 = 1, c_1 = 1, c_k = c_{\lfloor k/2 \rfloor} + c_{\lceil k/2 \rceil} \text{ for every integer } k \geq 2.$$

Prove that $c_n = n$ for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Proof. Let the property $P(n)$ be the equality $c_n = n$. $\leftarrow P(n)$

We will show that $P(n)$ is true for each integer $n \geq 1$.

Show that $P(1)$ is true: $c_1 = 1$ so $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i from 1 through k , then $P(k+1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 1$, and suppose that $c_i = i$ for each integer i with $1 \leq i \leq k$.
 \leftarrow inductive hypothesis

We must show that $c_{k+1} = k+1$.

Case 1: k is even. Then $k = 2i$ for some integer i with $1 \leq i < k$. So:

$$\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor (2i+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor i + 1/2 \rfloor = i, \text{ and}$$

$$\lceil (k+1)/2 \rceil = \lceil (2i+1)/2 \rceil = \lceil i + 1/2 \rceil = i+1.$$

Notice that $i+1 \leq k$.

By the inductive hypothesis, $c_i = i$ and $c_{i+1} = i+1$. Then

$$c_{k+1} = c_{\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor} + c_{\lceil (k+1)/2 \rceil} = c_i + c_{i+1} = i + (i+1) = 2i+1 = k+1,$$

[as was to be shown.]

Case 2: k is odd. Then $k = 2i+1$ for some integer i with $1 \leq i < k$. So:

$$\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor (2i+1+1)/2 \rfloor = \lfloor i+1 \rfloor = i+1, \text{ and}$$

$$\lceil (k+1)/2 \rceil = \lceil (2i+1+1)/2 \rceil = \lceil i+1 \rceil = i+1.$$

Notice that $i+1 \leq k$.

By the inductive hypothesis $c_{i+1} = i+1$. Then

$$c_{k+1} = c_{\lfloor (k+1)/2 \rfloor} + c_{\lceil (k+1)/2 \rceil} = c_{i+1} + c_{i+1} = (i+1) + (i+1) = 2i+2 = k+1,$$

[as was to be shown.] □

4.22 Exercise 22

One version of the game NIM starts with two piles of objects such as coins, stones, or matchsticks. In each turn a player is required to remove from one to three objects from one of the piles. The two players take turns doing this until both piles are empty. The

loser is the first player who can't make a move. Use strong mathematical induction to show that if both piles contain the same number of objects at the start of the game, the player who goes second can always win.

Proof. Let $P(n)$ be the sentence

In this version of NIM, if both piles initially contain n objects, the player who goes second can always win.

We will prove that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 0$.

Show that $P(0)$ is true:

If neither pile contains any objects, the player who goes first automatically loses because of not being able to make a move. So the second player wins the game by default. Thus $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i from 1 through k , then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$, and suppose:

In this version of NIM, for every integer i with $0 \leq i \leq k$, if both piles initially contain i objects, the player who goes second can always win.

We must show that In this version of NIM, if both piles initially contain $k + 1$ objects, the player who goes second can always win. $\leftarrow P(k + 1)$

So suppose both piles contain $k + 1$ objects, where $0 \leq i \leq k$, and suppose the first player removes r objects from pile #1, where $1 \leq r \leq 3$. If the second player removes r objects from pile #2, then both piles will have the same number of objects, namely $(k + 1) - r$, and $(k + 1) - r \leq k$ because $r \geq 1$. Thus, by inductive hypothesis, the second player can win. \square

4.23 Exercise 23

Define a game G as follows: Begin with a pile of n stones and 0 points. In the first move split the pile into two possibly unequal sub-piles, multiply the number of stones in one sub-pile times the number of stones in the other sub-pile, and add the product to your score. In the second move, split each of the newly created piles into a pair of possibly unequal sub-piles, multiply the number of stones in each sub-pile times the number of stones in the paired sub-pile, and add the new products to your score. Continue by successively splitting each newly created pile of stones that has at least two stones into a pair of sub-piles, multiplying the number of stones in each sub-pile times the number of stones in the paired sub-pile, and adding the new products to your score. The game G ends when no pile contains more than one stone.

4.23.1 (a)

Play G starting with 10 stones and using the following initial moves. In move 1 split the pile of 10 stones into two sub-piles with 3 and 7 stones respectively, compute $3 \cdot 7 = 21$, and find that your score is 21. In move 2 split the pile of 3 stones into two sub-piles, with 1 and 2 stones respectively, and split the pile of 7 stones into two sub-piles, with 4 and 3 stones respectively, compute $1 \cdot 2 = 2$ and $4 \cdot 3 = 12$, and find that your score is $21 + 2 + 12 = 35$. In move 3 split the pile of 4 stones into two sub-piles, each with 2 stones, and split the pile of 3 stones into two sub-piles, with 1 and 2 stones respectively, and find your new score. Continue splitting piles and computing your score until no pile has more than one stone. Show your final score along with a record of the numbers of stones in the piles you created with your moves.

10											
3			7							$3 \cdot 7$	21
1	2		4				3			$1 \cdot 2 + 4 \cdot 3$	14
	1	1	2		2		1	2		$1 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 2$	7
			1	1	1	1		1	1	$1 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1$	3
TOTAL										45	

Proof. □

4.23.2 (b)

Play G again starting with 10 stones, but use a different initial move from the one in part (a). Show your final score along with a record of the numbers of stones in the piles you created with your moves.

Proof.

10											
2		8						2 · 8		16	
1	1	4			4			1 · 1 + 4 · 4		17	
		2	2	2	2	2		2 · 2 + 2 · 2		8	
		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1 · 1 + 1 · 1 + 1 · 1 + 1 · 1	4

TOTAL 45 □

4.23.3 (c)

Show that you can use strong mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, given the set-up of game G , no matter how you split the piles in the various moves, your final score is $n(n - 1)/2$. The basis step may look a little strange because a pile consisting of one stone cannot be split into any sub-piles. Another way to say this is that it can only be split into zero piles, and that gives an answer that agrees with the general formula for the final score.

Proof. Let $P(n)$ be the statement: “No matter how you split the piles in the various moves, your final score is $n(n - 1)/2$.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: A pile of 1 stone cannot be split, therefore the score is 0, and $1(1 - 1)/2 = 0$ also. So $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$ if $P(i)$ is true for all integers i with $1 \leq i \leq k$ then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume $k \geq 1$ is an integer and assume that for all integers i with $1 \leq i \leq k$, a game played with starting i stones, no matter how you split the piles in various moves, your final score is $i(i - 1)/2$.

[We want to show that in a game played with $k + 1$ starting stones, no matter how you split the piles in various moves, your final score is $(k + 1)(k + 2)/2$.]

Starting with $k + 1$ stones, there are $\left\lfloor \frac{k + 1}{2} \right\rfloor$ different ways to split the stones: 1 and k , 2 and $k - 1$, 3 and $k - 2$, ..., and $k/2$ and $k/2 + 1$ if $k + 1$ is odd, $(k + 1)/2$ and $(k + 1)/2$ if $k + 1$ is even.

In other words, the first move splits the stones into piles of i and $(k + 1) - i$ for some $1 \leq i \leq \lfloor (k + 1)/2 \rfloor$. The score of this first move is $i(k + 1 - i) = ki + i - i^2$.

Then the rest of the game consists of two sub-games with starting piles of i and $(k + 1) - i$. By the inductive hypothesis, no matter how you split the stones in these sub-games, the final scores are

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{i(i + 1)}{2} = \frac{i^2 + i}{2} \\ \text{and } & \frac{(k + 1 - i)(k + 1 - i + 1)}{2} \\ &= \frac{(k + 1 - i)(k + 2 - i)}{2} = \frac{k^2 + 2k - ik + k + 2 - i - ik - 2i + i^2}{2} \\ &= \frac{k^2 + (3 - 2i)k + 2 - 3i + i^2}{2}, \text{ respectively.} \end{aligned}$$

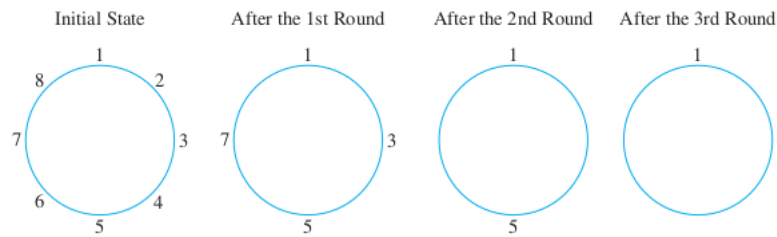
Then the total final score of the $k + 1$ stone game is:

$$ki + i - i^2 + \frac{i^2 + i}{2} + \frac{k^2 + (3 - 2i)k + 2 - 3i + i^2}{2} = \frac{k^2 + 3k + 2}{2}$$

which is the same as the formula $(k + 1)(k + 2)/2$ that we claimed, *[as was to be shown.]* □

4.24 Exercise 24

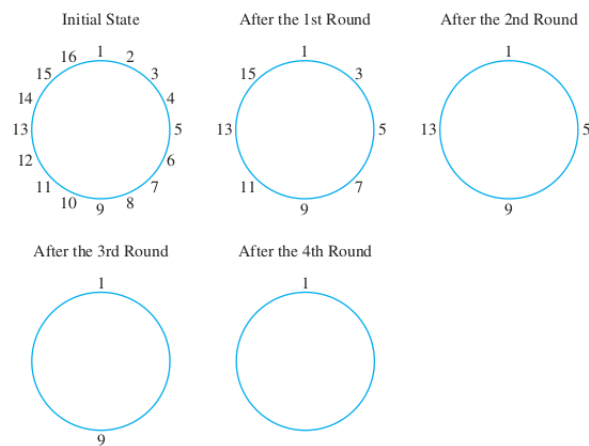
Imagine a situation in which eight people, numbered consecutively 1 – 8, are arranged in a circle. Starting from person #1, every second person in the circle is eliminated. The elimination process continues until only one person remains. In the first round the people numbered 2, 4, 6, and 8 are eliminated, in the second round the people numbered 3 and 7 are eliminated, and in the third round person #5 is eliminated, so after the third round only person #1 remains, as shown below.



4.24.1 (a)

Given a set of sixteen people arranged in a circle and numbered, consecutively 1 – 16, list the numbers of the people who are eliminated in each round if every second person is eliminated and the elimination process continues until only one person remains. Assume that the starting point is person #1.

Proof. The results are shown both diagrammatically and in a table (on the next page).



Round	Eliminated	Remaining
1	2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16	1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13
2	3, 7, 11, 15	1, 5, 9, 13
3	5, 13	1, 9
4	9	1

□

4.24.2 (b)

Use ordinary mathematical induction to prove that for every integer $n \geq 1$, given any set of 2^n people arranged in a circle and numbered consecutively 1 through 2^n , if one starts from person #1 and goes repeatedly around the circle successively eliminating every second person, eventually only person #1 will remain.

Proof. Let $P(n)$ be the statement “given any set of 2^n people arranged in a circle and numbered consecutively 1 through 2^n , if one starts from person #1 and goes repeatedly around the circle successively eliminating every second person, eventually only person #1 will remain.”

Show that $P(1)$ is true: When $n = 1$ we have $2^n = 2^1 = 2$, so there are 2 people on the circle. Starting from person #1, the second person is person #2, who gets eliminated. So only person #1 remains. Thus $P(1)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq 1$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume $k \geq 1$ is any integer and suppose that given any set of 2^k people arranged in a circle and numbered consecutively 1 through 2^k , if one starts from person #1 and goes repeatedly around the circle successively eliminating every second person, eventually only person #1 will remain.

Consider any set of 2^{k+1} people arranged in a circle and numbered consecutively 1 through 2^{k+1} . If we start from person #1 and go repeatedly around the circle successively eliminating every second person, then persons #2, #4, #6, \dots , $\#2^{k+1}$ will be eliminated.

This leaves us with a circle of the remaining 2^k people, numbered 1, 3, 5, 7, \dots , $2^{k+1} - 1$. By the inductive hypothesis, this game will result in only person #1 remaining, [as was to be shown.] \square

4.24.3 (c)

Use the result of part (b) to prove that for any nonnegative integers n and m with $2^n \leq 2^n + m < 2^{n+1}$, if $r = 2^n + m$, then given any set of r people arranged in a circle and numbered consecutively 1 through r , if one starts from person #1 and goes repeatedly around the circle successively eliminating every second person, eventually only person $\#(2m + 1)$ will remain.

Proof. ??? \square

4.25 Exercise 25

Find the mistake in the following “proof” that purports to show that every nonnegative integer power of every nonzero real number is 1.

“Proof: Let r be any nonzero real number and let the property $P(n)$ be the equation $r^n = 1$.

Show that $P(0)$ is true: $P(0)$ is true because $r^0 = 1$ by definition of zeroth power.

Show that for every integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i from 0 through k , then $P(k + 1)$ is also true: Let k be any integer with $k \geq 0$ and suppose that $r^i = 1$ for each integer i from 0 through k . This is the inductive hypothesis. We must show that $r^{k+1} = 1$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 r^{k+1} &= r^{k+k-(k-1)} && \text{because } k + k - (k - 1) = k + 1 \\
 &= \frac{r^k \cdot r^k}{r^{k-1}} && \text{by the laws of exponents} \\
 &= \frac{1 \cdot 1}{1} && \text{by inductive hypothesis} \\
 &= 1. && \text{by algebra}
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $r^{k+1} = 1$ [as was to be shown].

[Since we have proved the basis step and the inductive step of the strong mathematical induction, we conclude that the given statement is true.]”

Proof. The mistake is with the term r^{k-1} being replaced by 1. Because, the assumption is that $k \geq 0$ and $P(i)$ is true for all i with $0 \leq i \leq k$. So here the mistake is using $i = k - 1$. When $k = 0$ we get $i = k - 1 = -1$ which does not satisfy $0 \leq i$. So we cannot apply the inductive hypothesis to $i = k - 1$. \square

4.26 Exercise 26

Use the well-ordering principle for the integers to prove Theorem 4.4.4: Every integer greater than 1 is divisible by a prime number.

Proof. Let n be any integer greater than 1. Consider the set S of all positive integers other than 1 that divide n . Since $n \mid n$ and $n > 1$, there is at least one element in S . Hence, by the well-ordering principle for the integers, S has a smallest element; call it p . We claim that p is prime.

For suppose p is not prime. Then there are integers a and b with $1 < a < p$, $1 < b < p$, and $p = ab$. By definition of divides, $a \mid p$. Also $p \mid n$ because p is in S and every element in S divides n . Therefore, $a \mid p$ and $p \mid n$, and so, by transitivity of divisibility, $a \mid n$. Consequently, $a \in S$. But this contradicts the fact that $a < p$, and p is the smallest element of S .

[This contradiction shows that the supposition that p is not prime is false.] Hence p is prime, and we have shown the existence of a prime number that divides n . \square

4.27 Exercise 27

Use the well-ordering principle for the integers to prove the existence part of the unique factorization of integers theorem. In other words, prove that every integer greater than 1 is either prime or a product of prime numbers.

Proof. Consider the set S of integers that are greater than 1, not a prime, and not a product of prime numbers.

We claim that S is empty. Argue by contradiction and assume S is nonempty.

By the Well-Ordering Principle, S has a smallest element, call it a . So $a > 1$ and a is not prime and a is not a product of primes.

Since a is not prime, a is composite. By definition of composite $a = bc$ for some integers $1 < b < a$ and $1 < c < a$.

By the minimality of a , it follows that b and c are either primes or products of primes. Then $a = bc$ is also a product of primes, which is a contradiction.

[Thus our initial supposition was false and S is empty.] So it follows that every integer greater than 1 is either prime or a product of primes, [as was to be shown.] \square

4.28 Exercise 28

4.28.1 (a)

The Archimedean property for the rational numbers states that for every rational number r , there is an integer n such that $n > r$. Prove this property.

Proof. Suppose r is any rational number. [We need to show that there is an integer n such that $r < n$.]

Case 1 ($r \leq 0$): In this case, take $n = 1$. Then $r < n$.

Case 2 ($r > 0$): In this case, $r = a/b$ for some positive integers a and b (by definition of rational and because r is positive). Note that $r = a/b < n$ if, and only if, $a < nb$. Let $n = 2a$. Multiply both sides of the inequality $1 < 2$ by a to obtain $a < 2a$, and multiply both sides of the inequality $1 < b$ by $2a$ to obtain $2a < 2ab = nb$. Thus $a < 2a < nb$, and so, by transitivity of order, $a < nb$. Dividing both sides a by b gives that $a/b < n$, or, equivalently, that $r < n$.

Hence, in both cases, $r < n$ [as was to be shown]. \square

4.28.2 (b)

Prove that given any rational number r , the number $-r$ is also rational.

Proof. Assume r is any rational number. By definition of rational $r = a/b$ for some integers a, b with $b \neq 0$. Then $-r = (-a)/b$ where $-a$ and b are integers with $b \neq 0$. So by definition of rational, $-r$ is rational. \square

4.28.3 (c)

Use the results of parts (a) and (b) to prove that given any rational number r , there is an integer m such that $m < r$.

Proof. Assume r is any rational number. By part (b), $-r$ is a rational number. By part (a) applied to $-r$, there exists an integer n such that $n > -r$. Let $m = -n$. Then multiply the inequality $n > -r$ by -1 to get $-n < r$, or equivalently, $m < r$, [as was to be shown]. \square

4.29 Exercise 29

Use the results of exercise 28 and the well-ordering principle for the integers to show that given any rational number r , there is an integer m such that $m \leq r < m + 1$.

Hint: If r is any rational number, let S be the set of all integers n such that $r < n$. Use the results of exercises 28(a), 28(c), and the well-ordering principle for the integers to show that S has a least element, say v , and then show that $v - 1 \leq r < v$.

Proof. (following the Hint)

Assume r is any rational number. By Exercise 28 (c) there is an integer n such that $n < r$. Let S be the set of integers that are greater than n and greater than r . By Exercise 28 (a) S is nonempty. Since every integer in S is greater than the fixed integer n , by the well-ordering principle, S has a least element, call it v . Then $r < v$ and by the minimality of v , $v - 1 \leq r$. Let $m = v - 1$. Then m is an integer, and $m \leq r < m + 1$ [as was to be shown].

□

4.30 Exercise 30

Use the well-ordering principle to prove that given any integer $n \geq 1$, there exists an odd integer m and a nonnegative integer k such that $n = 2^k \cdot m$.

Proof. Let S be the set of all integers r such that $n = 2^i \cdot r$ for some integer i . Then $n \in S$ because $n = 2^0 \cdot n$, and so $S \neq \emptyset$. Also, since $n \geq 1$, each r in S is positive, and so, by the well-ordering principle, S has a least element m .

This means that $n = 2^k \cdot m$ (*) for some nonnegative integer k , and $m \leq r$ for every r in S .

We claim that m is odd. The reason is that if m is even, then $m = 2p$ for some integer p . Substituting into equation (*) gives

$$n = 2^k \cdot m = 2^k \cdot 2p = (2^k \cdot 2)p = 2^{k+1} \cdot p.$$

It follows that $p \in S$ and $p < m$, which contradicts the fact that m is the least element of S . Hence m is odd, and so $n = m \cdot 2^k$ for some odd integer m and nonnegative integer k . □

4.31 Exercise 31

Give examples to illustrate the proof of Theorem 5.4.1.

Proof. Let $k = 25$ so $k + 1 = 26$ is even. By the inductive hypothesis $(k + 1)/2 = 13$ has a binary representation:

$$13 = 8 + 4 + 1 = 1 \cdot 2^3 + 1 \cdot 2^2 + 0 \cdot 2^1 + 1 \cdot 2^0 = 1101_2.$$

Multiply everything by 2 and add missing powers of 2:

$$26 = 13 \cdot 2 = 16 + 8 + 2 = 1 \cdot 2^4 + 1 \cdot 2^3 + 0 \cdot 2^2 + 1 \cdot 2^1 + 0 \cdot 2^0 = 11010_2.$$

Let $k = 14$ so $k + 1 = 15$ is even. By the inductive hypothesis $k/2 = 7$ has a binary representation:

$$7 = 4 + 2 + 1 = 1 \cdot 2^2 + 1 \cdot 2^1 + 1 \cdot 2^0 = 111_2.$$

Multiply everything by 2 and add missing powers of 2:

$$14 = 7 \cdot 2 = 8 + 4 + 2 = 1 \cdot 2^3 + 1 \cdot 2^2 + 1 \cdot 2^1 + 0 \cdot 2^0 = 1110_2.$$

To get the binary representation of $k + 1$, just add 1:

$$15 = 14 + 1 = 1 \cdot 2^3 + 1 \cdot 2^2 + 1 \cdot 2^1 + 1 \cdot 2^0 = 1111_2.$$

□

4.32 Exercise 32

Suppose $P(n)$ is a property such that

1. $P(0), P(1), P(2)$ are all true,
2. for each integer $k \geq 0$, if $P(k)$ is true, then $P(3k)$ is true.

Must it follow that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 0$? If yes, explain why; if no, give a counterexample.

Proof. No. Let $P(n)$ be the statement: “either $n = 1$ or $n = 2$ or $3 \mid n$.”

Then $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$ are all true, because $3 \mid 0$, and $1 = 1$ and $2 = 2$.

Assume $k \geq 0$ is an integer and $P(k)$ is true. [We want to show $P(3k)$ is true.] $P(3k)$ is true because $3 \mid 3k$.

However it is not the case that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq 0$: for example $P(4)$ is false because $4 \neq 1$ and $4 \neq 2$ and $3 \nmid 4$. □

4.33 Exercise 33

Prove that if a statement can be proved by strong mathematical induction, then it can be proved by ordinary mathematical induction. To do this, let $P(n)$ be a property that is defined for each integer n , and suppose the following two statements are true:

1. $P(a), P(a + 1), P(a + 2), \dots, P(b)$.
2. For any integer $k \geq b$, if $P(i)$ is true for each integer i from a through k , then $P(k + 1)$ is true.

The principle of strong mathematical induction would allow us to conclude immediately that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq a$. Can we reach the same conclusion using the principle of ordinary mathematical induction? Yes! To see this, let $Q(n)$ be the property $P(j)$ is true for each integer j with $a \leq j \leq n$. Then use ordinary mathematical induction to show that $Q(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq b$. That is, prove:

1. $Q(b)$ is true.

2. For each integer $k \geq b$, if $Q(k)$ is true then $Q(k + 1)$ is true.

Proof. Show that $Q(b)$ is true: $Q(b)$ is the statement “ $P(j)$ is true for each integer j with $a \leq j \leq b$.” This is true because we are assuming that $P(a), P(a + 1), P(a + 2), \dots, P(b)$ are all true (1. given above). Therefore $Q(b)$ is true.

Show that for each integer $k \geq b$, if $Q(k)$ is true then $Q(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume k is an integer with $k \geq b$ and assume $Q(k)$ is true. By definition of Q , this means that $P(j)$ is true for all integers j with $a \leq j \leq k$. So by 2. given in the exercise, $P(k + 1)$ is true. So $P(j)$ is true for all integers j with $a \leq j \leq k + 1$. Thus $Q(k + 1)$ is true, [as was to be shown]. \square

4.34 Exercise 34

It is a fact that every integer $n \geq 1$ can be written in the form

$$c_r \cdot 3^r + c_{r-1} \cdot 3^{r-1} + \cdots + c_2 \cdot 3^2 + c_1 \cdot 3 + c_0,$$

where $c_r = 1$ or 2 and $c_i = 0, 1$, or 2 for each integer $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, r - 1$. Sketch a proof of this fact.

Hint: In the inductive step, divide into cases depending on whether $k + 1$ can be written as $k + 1 = 3x$ or $k + 1 = 3x + 1$ or $k + 1 = 3x + 2$ for some integer x .

Proof. Here is a sketch using strong induction. Let $P(n)$ be the statement “ n can be written in the form given above.”

For the base cases, we need to prove $P(0), P(1)$ and $P(2)$. This is easily verified manually.

For the inductive step, assume $P(i)$ is true for all i from 0 through k . To show $P(k + 1)$ consider 3 cases:

$k + 1 = 3x$: Say we have, by inductive hypothesis applied to $(k + 1)/3$,

$$(k + 1)/3 = c_r \cdot 3^r + c_{r-1} \cdot 3^{r-1} + \cdots + c_2 \cdot 3^2 + c_1 \cdot 3 + c_0.$$

Then multiplying by 3 we get

$$k + 1 = c_r \cdot 3^{r+1} + c_{r-1} \cdot 3^r + \cdots + c_2 \cdot 3^3 + c_1 \cdot 3^2 + c_0 \cdot 3^1 + 0.$$

Thus we get the representation for $k + 1$.

$k + 1 = 3x + 1$: Similar, but start by using inductive hypothesis applied to $k/3$ instead, then add 1 .

$k + 1 = 3x + 2$: Similar, but start by using inductive hypothesis applied to $(k - 1)/3$ instead, then add 2 . \square

4.35 Exercise 35

Use mathematical induction to prove the existence part of the quotient-remainder theorem. In other words, use mathematical induction to prove that given any integer n and any positive integer d , there exist integers q and r such that $n = dq + r$ and $0 \leq r < d$.

Hint: In the inductive step, let an integer $k \geq 0$ be given and suppose that there exist integers q' and r' such that $k = dq' + r'$ and $0 \leq r' < d$. You must show that there exist integers q and r such that

$$k + 1 = dq + r \text{ and } 0 \leq r < d.$$

To do this, consider the two cases $r' < d - 1$ and $r' = d - 1$.

Proof. We will prove this for nonnegative integers n first. Then we'll use that to prove it in general.

Let $P(n)$ be the statement: "for any positive integer d , there exist integers q and r such that $n = dq + r$ and $0 \leq r < d$."

Show that $P(0)$ is true: Let $q = r = 0$. Then $dq + r = d \cdot 0 + 0 = 0 = n$ so $P(0)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq 0$ if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true: (following the Hint)

Let an integer $k \geq 0$ be given and suppose that there exist integers q' and r' such that $k = dq' + r'$ and $0 \leq r' < d$. [We must show that there exist integers q and r such that]

$$k + 1 = dq + r \text{ and } 0 \leq r < d.$$

Case 1: $r' < d - 1$. Then let $q = q'$ and $r = r' + 1$. So we have

$$k + 1 = (dq' + r') + 1 = dq' + (r' + 1) = dq + r$$

and since $r' < d - 1$ we have $r = r' + 1 < d$, so this proves $P(k + 1)$.

Case 2: $r' = d - 1$. Notice that $r' + 1 = d$. Let $q = q' + 1$ and $r = 0$. Then

$$k + 1 = (dq' + r') + 1 = dq' + (r' + 1) = dq' + d = d(q' + 1) = dq + r,$$

[as was to be shown.]

Now assume $n < 0$. Then $-n > 0$. By the above, there exist integers q', r' such that $-n = dq' + r'$ where $0 \leq r' < d$.

So we have $n = -dq' - r' = d(-q') + (-r')$.

Case 1: $r' = 0$. Then let $q = -q'$ and $r = 0$. So we have $n = d(-q') + 0 = dq + r$ [as was to be shown.]

Case 2: $0 < r'$. Since $0 < r' < d$, multiplying the inequalities by -1 we get $0 > -r' > -d$ and adding d we get $d > d - r' > 0$. Thus $0 < d - r' < d$.

So let $q = -q' - 1$ and $r = d - r'$. Then

$$n = -dq' - r' = -d(q' + 1) + d - r' = d(-q' - 1) + (d - r') = dq + r,$$

[as was to be shown]. □

4.36 Exercise 36

Prove that if a statement can be proved by ordinary mathematical induction, then it can be proved by the well-ordering principle.

Hint: Given a predicate $P(n)$ that satisfies conditions (1) and (2) of the principle of mathematical induction, let S be the set of all integers greater than or equal to a for which $P(n)$ is false. Suppose that S has one or more elements, and use the well-ordering principle for the integers to derive a contradiction.

Proof. (following the Hint)

Assume a is a fixed integer, and assume a predicate $P(n)$ satisfies the two conditions of mathematical induction:

1. $P(a)$ is true.
2. For every integer $k \geq a$, if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true.

Let S be the set of all integers greater than or equal to a for which $P(n)$ is false. [We want to show that S is empty.]

Argue by contradiction and assume S is nonempty. Then by the well-ordering principle, S has a smallest element, call it s .

By definition of S , we have $a \geq s$ and $P(s)$ is false. Since $P(a)$ is true by 1., we have $a < s$ and therefore $a \leq s - 1$. By the minimality of s , we have $P(s - 1)$ is true. Then by 2. we have $P(s)$ is true, a contradiction.

[Thus our supposition was false, and S is empty, so $P(n)$ is true for all $n \geq a$, as was to be shown.] □

4.37 Exercise 37

Use the principle of ordinary mathematical induction to prove the well-ordering principle for the integers.

Hint: Suppose S is a set containing one or more integers, all of which are greater than or equal to some integer a , and suppose that S does not have a least element. Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ $i \notin S$ for any integer i with $a \leq i \leq n$.” Use mathematical induction to prove that $P(n)$ is true for every integer $n \geq a$, and explain how this result contradicts the supposition that S does not have a least element.

Proof. (following the Hint)

Suppose S is a set containing one or more integers, all of which are greater than or equal to some integer a . Argue by contradiction and suppose that S does not have a least element. *[We want to reach a contradiction.]*

Let the property $P(n)$ be the sentence “ $i \notin S$ for any integer i with $a \leq i \leq n$.”

Show that $P(a)$ is true: $P(a)$ is the statement “ $i \notin S$ for any integer i with $a \leq i \leq a$ ”, or equivalently, $a \notin S$.

This is true. Why? Suppose $a \in S$. By the definition of S , every element of S is greater than or equal to a . But if $a \in S$, then this would make a the least element of S , contradicting our assumption. Thus $a \notin S$ and hence $P(a)$ is true.

Show that for any integer $k \geq a$ if $P(k)$ is true then $P(k + 1)$ is true:

Assume $k \geq a$ is any integer and assume $i \notin S$ for any integer i with $a \leq i \leq k$. *[We want to show that $i \notin S$ for any integer i with $a \leq i \leq k + 1$.]* So, all we have to show is that $k + 1 \notin S$. Argue by contradiction and assume $k + 1 \in S$.

Then $k + 1$ is the least element of S , since $i \notin S$ for any integer i with $a \leq i \leq k$ and all elements of S are greater than or equal to a . This is a contradiction, therefore $k + 1 \notin S$ and so $P(k + 1)$ is true.

By mathematical induction $P(n)$ is true for all integers n with $a \leq n$. So S is empty. *[This contradicts the fact that S is nonempty. Thus our initial supposition was false and S has a least element.]* \square

5 Exercise Set 5.5

Exercises 1 – 5 contain a while loop and a predicate. In each case show that if the predicate is true before entry to the loop, then it is also true after exit from the loop.

5.1 Exercise 1

```
loop:      while ( $m \geq 0$  and  $m \leq 100$ )
             $m := m + 1$ 
             $n := n - 1$ 
            end while
```

predicate: $m + n = 100$

Proof. Suppose the predicate $m + n = 100$ is true before entry to the loop. Then

$$m_{\text{old}} + n_{\text{old}} = 100.$$

After execution of the loop,

$$m_{\text{new}} = m_{\text{old}} + 1 \text{ and } n_{\text{new}} = n_{\text{old}} - 1,$$

so

$$m_{\text{new}} + n_{\text{new}} = (m_{\text{old}} + 1) + (n_{\text{old}} - 1) = m_{\text{old}} + n_{\text{old}} = 100.$$

□

5.2 Exercise 2

loop: **while** ($m \geq 0$ and $m \leq 100$)
 $m := m + 4$
 $n := n - 2$
 end while

predicate: $m + n$ is odd

Proof. Suppose the predicate “ $m + n$ is odd” is true before entry to the loop. Then

$$m_{\text{old}} + n_{\text{old}} = 2k + 1$$

for some integer k . After execution of the loop,

$$m_{\text{new}} = m_{\text{old}} + 4 \text{ and } n_{\text{new}} = n_{\text{old}} - 2,$$

so

$$m_{\text{new}} + n_{\text{new}} = (m_{\text{old}} + 4) + (n_{\text{old}} - 2) = m_{\text{old}} + n_{\text{old}} + 2 = 2k + 1 + 2 = 2k + 3 = 2(k + 1) + 1.$$

Therefore $m + n$ is still odd, by definition of odd. □

5.3 Exercise 3

loop: **while** ($m \geq 0$ and $m \leq 100$)
 $m := 3 \cdot m$
 $n := 5 \cdot n$
 end while

predicate: $m^3 > n^2$

Proof. Suppose the predicate $m^3 > n^2$ is true before entry to the loop. Then

$$m_{\text{old}}^3 > n_{\text{old}}^2.$$

After execution of the loop,

$$m_{\text{new}} = 3 \cdot m_{\text{old}} \text{ and } n_{\text{new}} = 5 \cdot n_{\text{old}},$$

so

$$m_{\text{new}}^3 = (3 \cdot m_{\text{old}})^3 = 27 \cdot m_{\text{old}}^3 > 27 \cdot n_{\text{old}}^2.$$

Now since $n_{\text{new}} = 5 \cdot n_{\text{old}}$, then $n_{\text{old}} = \frac{1}{5}n_{\text{new}}$. Hence

$$m_{\text{new}}^3 > 27 \cdot n_{\text{old}}^2 = 27 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{5}n_{\text{new}}\right)^2 = 27 \cdot \frac{1}{25}n_{\text{new}}^2 = \frac{27}{25} \cdot n_{\text{new}}^2 > n_{\text{new}}^2.$$

□

5.4 Exercise 4

loop: **while** ($n \geq 0$ and $n \leq 100$)
 $n := n + 1$
 end while

predicate: $2^n < (n + 2)!$

Proof. Suppose the predicate $2^n < (n + 2)!$ is true before entry to the loop. Then

$$2^{n_{\text{old}}} < (n_{\text{old}} + 2)!.$$

After execution of the loop,

$$n_{\text{new}} = n_{\text{old}} + 1,$$

and since $n \geq 0$ we have $2 < n_{\text{old}} + 3$, so

$$2^{n_{\text{new}}} = 2^{n_{\text{old}}+1} = 2 \cdot 2^{n_{\text{old}}} < 2 \cdot (n_{\text{old}} + 2)! < (n_{\text{old}} + 3) \cdot (n_{\text{old}} + 2)! = (n_{\text{old}} + 3)! = (n_{\text{new}} + 2)!.$$

□

5.5 Exercise 5

loop: **while** ($n \geq 3$ and $n \leq 100$)
 $n := n + 1$
 end while

predicate: $2n + 1 \leq 2^n$

Proof. Suppose the predicate $2n + 1 \leq 2^n$ is true before entry to the loop. Then

$$2n_{\text{old}} + 1 \leq 2^{n_{\text{old}}}.$$

After execution of the loop,

$$n_{\text{new}} = n_{\text{old}} + 1,$$

so

$$2n_{\text{new}} + 1 = 2(n_{\text{old}} + 1) + 1 = 2n_{\text{old}} + 1 + 2 \leq 2^{n_{\text{old}}} + 2 \leq 2^{n_{\text{old}}} + 2^{n_{\text{old}}} = 2^{n_{\text{old}}+1} = 2^{n_{\text{new}}}.$$

□

Exercises 6 – 9 each contain a while loop annotated with a pre- and a post-condition and also a loop invariant. In each case, use the loop invariant theorem to prove the correctness of the loop with respect to the pre- and post-conditions.

5.6 Exercise 6

[Pre-condition: m is a nonnegative integer, x is a real number, $i = 0$, and $exp = 1$.]

```
while ( $i \neq m$ )  
    1.  $exp := exp \cdot x$   
    2.  $i := i + 1$   
end while
```

[Post-condition: $exp = x^m$]

loop invariant: $I(n)$ is “ $exp = x^n$ and $i = n$.”

Proof. [The wording of this proof is almost the same as that of Example 5.5.2.]

I. Basis Property: [$I(0)$ is true before the first iteration of the loop.]

$I(0)$ is “ $exp = x_0$ and $i = 0$.” According to the pre-condition, before the first iteration of the loop $exp = 1$ and $i = 0$. Since $x_0 = 1$, $I(0)$ is evidently true.

II. Inductive Property: [If $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before a loop iteration (where $k \geq 0$), then $I(k + 1)$ is true after the loop iteration.]

Suppose k is any nonnegative integer such that $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before an iteration of the loop. Then as execution reaches the top of the loop, $i \neq m$, $exp = x^k$, and $i = k$. Since $i \neq m$, the guard is passed and statement 1 is executed. Now before execution of statement 1, $exp_{old} = x^k$, so execution of statement 1 has the following effect:

$$exp_{new} = exp_{old} \cdot x = x^k \cdot x = x^{k+1}.$$

Similarly, before statement 2 is executed, $i_{old} = k$, so after execution of statement 2,

$$i_{new} = i_{old} + 1 = k + 1.$$

Hence after the loop iteration, the two statements $exp = x^{k+1}$ and $i = k + 1$ are true, and so $I(k + 1)$ is true.

III. Eventual Falsity of Guard: [After a finite number of iterations of the loop, G becomes false.] The guard G is the condition $i \neq m$, and m is a nonnegative integer. By I and II, it is known that for every integer $n \geq 0$, if the loop is iterated n times, then $exp = x^n$ and $i = n$. So after m iterations of the loop, $i = m$. Thus G becomes false after m iterations of the loop.

IV. Correctness of the Post-Condition: [If N is the least number of iterations after which G is false and $I(N)$ is true, then the value of the algorithm variables will be as specified in the post-condition of the loop.] According to the post-condition, the value of exp after execution of the loop should be x^m . But when G is false, $i = m$. And when $I(N)$ is true, $i = N$ and $exp = x^N$. Since both conditions (G false and $I(N)$ true) are satisfied, $m = i = N$ and $exp = x^m$, as required. \square

5.7 Exercise 7

[Pre-condition: $\text{largest} = A[1]$ and $i = 1$].

```
while ( $i \neq m$ )  
    1.  $i := i + 1$   
    2. if  $A[i] > \text{largest}$  then  $\text{largest} := A[i]$   
end while
```

[Post-condition: $\text{largest} = \text{maximum value of } A[1], A[2], \dots, A[m]$.]

loop invariant: $I(n)$ is “ $\text{largest} = \text{maximum value of } A[1], \dots, A[n + 1]$ and $i = n + 1$.”

Proof. I. Basis Property: [$I(0)$ is true before the first iteration of the loop.]

$I(0)$ is “ $\text{largest} = \text{maximum of } A[1]$ and $i = 0 + 1$.” According to the pre-condition, before the first iteration of the loop, $\text{largest} = A[1]$ and $i = 1$. So $I(0)$ is evidently true.

II. Inductive Property: [*If $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before a loop iteration (where $k \geq 0$), then $I(k + 1)$ is true after the loop iteration.*]

Suppose k is any nonnegative integer such that $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before an iteration of the loop. Then as execution reaches the top of the loop, $i \neq m, i = k + 1$ and $\text{largest} = \text{maximum of } A[1], \dots, A[k + 1]$. Since $i \neq m$, the guard is passed and statement 1 is executed. The execution of statement 1 has the following effect:

$$i_{\text{new}} = i_{\text{old}} + 1 = k + 1 + 1 = k + 2.$$

Similarly, before statement 2 is executed, $\text{largest}_{\text{old}} = \text{maximum of } A[1], \dots, A[k + 1]$, so after execution of statement 2, if $A[k + 2] > \text{largest}$ then we have

$$\text{largest}_{\text{new}} = A[k + 2]$$

and else we have

$$\text{largest}_{\text{new}} = \text{largest}_{\text{old}}.$$

Hence after the loop iteration, the two statements $\text{largest} = \text{maximum of } A[1], \dots, A[k + 2]$ and $i = (k + 1) + 1$ are true, and so $I(k + 1)$ is true.

III. Eventual Falsity of Guard: [*After a finite number of iterations of the loop, G becomes false.*]

The guard G is the condition $i \neq m$, and m is a nonnegative integer. By I and II, it is known that for every integer $n \geq 0$, if the loop is iterated n times, then $i = n + 1$. So after $m - 1$ iterations of the loop, $i = m$. Thus G becomes false after $m - 1$ iterations of the loop.

IV. Correctness of the Post-Condition: [*If N is the least number of iterations after which G is false and $I(N)$ is true, then the value of the algorithm variables will be as specified in the post-condition of the loop.*]

According to the post-condition, the value of largest after execution of the loop should be the maximum of $A[1], \dots, A[m]$. But when G is false, $i = m$. And when $I(N)$ is

true, $i = N + 1$ and largest = maximum of $A[1], \dots, A[N + 1]$. Since both conditions (G false and $I(N)$ true) are satisfied, $m = i = N + 1$ and so largest = maximum of $A[1], \dots, A[m]$, as required. \square

5.8 Exercise 8

[Pre-condition: $sum = A[1]$ and $i = 1$.]

```

while ( $i \neq m$ )
    1.  $i := i + 1$ 
    2.  $sum := sum + A[i]$ 
end while

```

[Post-condition: $sum = A[1] + \dots + A[m]$.]

loop invariant: $I(n)$ is “ $i = n + 1$ and $sum = A[1] + \dots + A[n + 1]$.”

Proof. I. Basis Property: $I(0)$ is “ $i = 1$ and $sum = A[1]$.” According to the pre-condition, this statement is true.

II. Inductive Property: Suppose k is a nonnegative integer such that $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before an iteration of the loop. Then as execution reaches the top of the loop, $i \neq m, i = k + 1$, and $sum = A[1] + A[2] + \dots + A[k + 1]$. Since $i \neq m$, the guard is passed and statement 1 is executed. Now before execution of statement 1, $i_{old} = k + 1$. So after execution of statement 1, $i_{new} = i_{old} + 1 = (k + 1) + 1 = k + 2$. Also before statement 2 is executed, $sum_{old} = A[1] + A[2] + \dots + A[k + 1]$. Execution of statement 2 adds $A[k + 2]$ to this sum, and so after statement 2 is executed, $sum_{new} = A[1] + A[2] + \dots + A[k + 1] + A[k + 2]$. Thus after the loop iteration, $I(k + 1)$ is true.

III. Eventual Falsity of Guard: The guard G is the condition $i \neq m$. By I and II, it is known that for every integer $n \geq 1$, after n iterations of the loop, $I(n)$ is true. Hence, after $m - 1$ iterations of the loop, $I(m)$ is true, which implies that $i = m$ and G is false.

IV. Correctness of the Post-Condition: Suppose that N is the least number of iterations after which G is false and $I(N)$ is true. Then (since G is false) $i = m$ and (since $I(N)$ is true) $i = N + 1$ and $sum = A[1] + A[2] + \dots + A[N + 1]$. Putting these together gives $m = N + 1$, and so $sum = A[1] + A[2] + \dots + A[m]$, which is the post-condition. \square

5.9 Exercise 9

[Pre-condition: $a = A$ and A is a positive integer.]

```

while ( $a > 0$ )
     $a := a - 2$ 
end while

```

[Post-condition: $a = 0$ if A is even and $a = -1$ if A is odd.]

loop invariant: $I(n)$ is “Both a and A are even integers or both are odd integers and, in either case, $a \geq -1$.”

Proof. I. Basis Property: $I(0)$ is “Both a and A are even integers or both are odd integers and, in either case, $a \geq -1$.” According to the pre-condition, $a = A$ and A is a positive integer, therefore $I(0)$ is true.

II. Inductive Property: Suppose k is a nonnegative integer such that $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before an iteration of the loop. Then as execution reaches the top of the loop, $a > 0$ and both a and A are even integers or both are odd integers and, in either case, $a \geq -1$. Since $a > 0$, the guard is passed and the statement is executed.

Now before execution of the statement, $a_{\text{old}} > 0$. So after execution of the statement, $a_{\text{new}} = a_{\text{old}} - 2$. Subtracting 2 does not change evenness / oddness. So the parity of a_{new} is the same as the parity of a_{old} , which is the same as the parity of A . Also, since $a_{\text{old}} > 0$, $a_{\text{new}} \geq 1$, so $a_{\text{new}} = a_{\text{old}} - 2 \geq 1 - 2 = -1$. Thus after the loop iteration, $I(k+1)$ is true.

III. Eventual Falsity of Guard: The guard G is the condition $a > 0$. After each iteration of the loop, the value of a is decreased by 2. So eventually we will have $a \leq 0$ and therefore G will be false.

IV. Correctness of the Post-Condition: Suppose that N is the least number of iterations after which G is false and $I(N)$ is true. Then (since G is false) $a \leq 0$ and (since $I(N)$ is true) a and A are either both odd or both even, and $a \geq -1$.

Case 1: A is even. Then $A = 2k$ for some integer k . Then after k iterations, a will be decreased by $2k$, reaching zero, which falsifies the loop guard. So in this case $N = k$ and at the end of the loop $a = 0$, which proves the post-condition.

Case 2: A is odd. Then $A = 2k + 1$ for some integer k . Then after k iterations, a will be decreased by $2k$, reaching 1, which is not enough to falsify the loop guard. Then after 1 more iteration, $a = -1$ and the loop stops. So in this case $N = k + 1$ and at the end of the loop $a = -1$, which proves the post-condition. \square

5.10 Exercise 10

Prove correctness of the while loop of Algorithm 4.10.3 (in exercise 27 of Exercise Set 4.10) with respect to the following pre- and post-conditions:

Pre-condition: A and B are positive integers, $a = A$, and $b = B$.

Post-condition: One of a or b is zero and the other is nonzero.

Whichever is nonzero equals $\text{gcd}(A, B)$.

Use the loop invariant

$I(n)$: “ (1) a and b are nonnegative integers with $\text{gcd}(a, b) = \text{gcd}(A, B)$,
 (2) at most one of a and b equals 0,
 (3) $0 \leq a + b \leq A + B - n$.”

Proof. Hint: Assume $G \wedge I(k)$ is true for a nonnegative integer k . Then $a_{\text{old}} \neq 0$ and $b_{\text{old}} \neq 0$ and

- (1) a_{old} and b_{old} are nonnegative integers with $\gcd(a_{\text{old}}, b_{\text{old}}) = \gcd(A, B)$.
- (2) At most one of a_{old} and b_{old} equals 0.
- (3) $0 \leq a_{\text{old}} + b_{\text{old}} \leq A + B - k$.

It must be shown that $I(k+1)$ is true after the loop iteration. That means it is necessary to show that

- (1) a_{new} and b_{new} are nonnegative integers with $\gcd(a_{\text{new}}, b_{\text{new}}) = \gcd(A, B)$.
- (2) At most one of a_{new} and b_{new} equals 0.
- (3) $0 \leq a_{\text{new}} + b_{\text{new}} \leq A + B - (k + 1)$.

To show (3), observe that

$$a_{\text{new}} + b_{\text{new}} = \begin{cases} a_{\text{old}} - b_{\text{old}} + b_{\text{old}} & \text{if } a_{\text{old}} \geq b_{\text{old}} \\ b_{\text{old}} - a_{\text{old}} + a_{\text{old}} & \text{if } a_{\text{old}} < b_{\text{old}}. \end{cases}$$

[The reason for this is that when $a_{\text{old}} \geq b_{\text{old}}$, then $a_{\text{new}} = a_{\text{old}} - b_{\text{old}}$ and $b_{\text{new}} = b_{\text{old}}$, and when $a_{\text{old}} < b_{\text{old}}$, then $b_{\text{new}} = b_{\text{old}} - a_{\text{old}}$ and $a_{\text{new}} = a_{\text{old}}$.]

Simplifying:

$$a_{\text{new}} + b_{\text{new}} = \begin{cases} a_{\text{old}} & \text{if } a_{\text{old}} \geq b_{\text{old}} \\ b_{\text{old}} & \text{if } a_{\text{old}} < b_{\text{old}}. \end{cases}$$

Now since $a_{\text{old}} \neq 0$ and $b_{\text{old}} \neq 0$, and since a_{old} and b_{old} are nonnegative integers, then $a_{\text{old}} \geq 1$ and $b_{\text{old}} \geq 1$. Hence, $a_{\text{old}} - 1 \geq 0$ and $b_{\text{old}} - 1 \geq 0$, and so $a_{\text{old}} \leq a_{\text{old}} + b_{\text{old}} - 1$ and $b_{\text{old}} \leq b_{\text{old}} + a_{\text{old}} - 1$. It follows that $a_{\text{new}} + b_{\text{new}} \leq a_{\text{old}} + b_{\text{old}} - 1 \leq (A + B - k) - 1$ by noting that (3) is true when going into the k th iteration. Thus, $a_{\text{new}} + b_{\text{new}} < A + B - (k + 1)$ by algebraic simplification. \square

5.11 Exercise 11

The following **while** loop implements a way to multiply two numbers that was developed by the ancient Egyptians.

[Pre-condition: A and B are positive integers, $x = A$, $y = B$, and $\text{product} = 0$.]

```
while ( $y \neq 0$ )
   $r := y \bmod 2$ 
  if  $r = 0$ 
    then do  $x := 2 \cdot x$ 
            $y := y \div 2$ 
    end do
  if  $r = 1$ 
    then do  $\text{product} := \text{product} + x$ 
            $y := y - 1$ 
    end do
end while
```

[Post-condition: $\text{product} = A \cdot B$]

5.11.1 (a)

Make a trace table to show that the algorithm gives the correct answer for multiplying $A = 13$ times $B = 18$.

Proof.

A	13						
B	18						
r		0	1	0	0	0	1
x	13	26	26	52	104	208	208
y	18	9	8	4	2	1	0
product	0	0	26	26	26	26	234

□

5.11.2 (b)

Prove the correctness of this loop with respect to its pre- and post-conditions by using the loop invariant

$$I(n) : xy + \text{product} = A \cdot B.$$

Proof. I. Basis Property: $I(0)$ is “ $xy + \text{product} = A \cdot B$.” Before the loop begins executing, we have $x = A, y = B, \text{product} = 0$, so $xy + \text{product} = A \cdot B + 0 = AB$. Therefore $I(0)$ is true.

II. Inductive Property: Suppose k is a nonnegative integer such that $G \wedge I(k)$ is true before an iteration of the loop.

Then as execution reaches the top of the loop, since G is true we have $y \neq 0$, so the guard is passed and the statement is executed.

Now before execution of the statement, since $I(k)$ is true we have $x_{old}y_{old} + \text{product}_{old} = AB$. Then $r := y \bmod 2$ is executed. There are two cases:

Case 1: $r = 0$. Then the first branch is executed. So we have $x_{new} = 2x_{old}$, $y_{new} = y_{old} \text{ div } 2$, and $\text{product}_{new} = \text{product}_{old}$ (because product does not get modified).

Notice that since $r = 0$, y_{old} is even, therefore $y_{new} = y_{old} \text{ div } 2 = y_{old}/2$. So after execution of the statement,

$$x_{new}y_{new} + \text{product}_{new} = (2x_{old})(y_{old}/2) + \text{product}_{old} = x_{old}y_{old} + \text{product}_{old} = AB.$$

Thus after the loop iteration, $I(k+1)$ is true.

Case 2: $r = 1$. Then the second branch is executed. So we have $\text{product}_{new} = \text{product}_{old} + x_{old}$, $y_{new} = y_{old} - 1$, and $x_{new} = x_{old}$ (because x does not get modified). So after execution of the statement,

$$\begin{aligned} x_{new}y_{new} + \text{product}_{new} &= x_{old}(y_{old}-1) + (\text{product}_{old} + x_{old}) = x_{old}y_{old} - x_{old} + \text{product}_{old} + x_{old} \\ &= x_{old}y_{old} + \text{product}_{old} = AB. \end{aligned}$$

Thus after the loop iteration, $I(k+1)$ is true.

III. Eventual Falsity of Guard: The guard G is the condition $y \neq 0$. y starts with $y = B$, a positive integer. After each iteration of the loop, either y is divided in half, or reduced by 1.

So in each iteration $y_{new} < y_{old}$. Moreover, division by 2 and subtraction by 1 cannot reduce y to negative values without reaching zero first. Therefore eventually we will reach $y = 0$ and G will be false.

IV. Correctness of the Post-Condition: Suppose that N is the least number of iterations after which G is false and $I(N)$ is true.

Then (since G is false) $y = 0$, and (since $I(N)$ is true) $xy + product = AB$. So $x \cdot +product = AB$, therefore $product = AB$, which is the post-condition. \square

5.12 Exercise 12

The following sentence could be added to the loop invariant for the Euclidean algorithm:

There exist integers u, v, s , and t such that $a = uA + vB$ and $b = sA + tB$. [5.5.12](#)

5.12.1 (a)

Show that this sentence is a loop invariant for

```
while (b  $\neq$  0)
    r := a mod b
    a := b
    b := r
end while
```

Proof. Assume $G \wedge I(k)$ is true for some nonnegative integer k . [We want to show $I(k+1)$ is true.]

Since $I(k)$ is true, there exist integers u', v', s' , and t' such that $a_{old} = u'A + v'B$ and $b_{old} = s'A + t'B$.

Since G is true, $b \neq 0$ so the guard is passed that the statements are executed. After execution we get $a_{new} = b_{old}$ and $b_{new} = a_{old} \bmod b_{old}$.

So $a_{new} = b_{old} = s'A + t'B$. Let $u = s', v = t'$.

Now let's work on $b_{new} = a_{old} \bmod b_{old}$. By definition of mod, $a_{old} = b_{old} \cdot m + b_{new}$ for some integers m, n . We have $a_{old} = u'A + v'B$ and $b_{old} = s'A + t'B$, so

$$u'A + v'B = (s'A + t'B)m + b_{new}, \text{ so } (u' - s'm)A + (v' - t'm)B = b_{new}.$$

Let $s = u' - s'm$, and let $t = v' - t'm$.

We have shown that there exist integers u, v, s , and t such that $a_{new} = uA + vB$ and $b_{new} = sA + tB$. This proves $I(k+1)$. \square

5.12.2 (b)

Show that if initially $a = A$ and $b = B$, then sentence (5.5.12) is true before the first iteration of the loop.

Proof. We can take $u = 1, v = 0, s = 0, t = 1$. Then (5.5.12) is satisfied. \square

5.12.3 (c)

Explain how the correctness proof for the Euclidean algorithm together with the results of (a) and (b) above allow you to conclude that given any integers A and B with $A > B \geq 0$, there exist integers u and v so that $\gcd(A, B) = uA + vB$.

Proof. We can add the above loop invariant to the correctness proof of the Euclidean algorithm, and it stays correct by parts (a) and (b).

At the end of the Euclidean algorithm, the above invariant still holds, and we have $\gcd(A, B) = a$. By the above invariant, there exist integers u, v such that $a = uA + vB$ at the end of the algorithm. Therefore $\gcd(A, B) = a = uA + vB$. \square

5.12.4 (d)

By actually calculating u, v, s , and t at each stage of execution of the Euclidean algorithm, find integers u and v so that $\gcd(330, 156) = 330u + 156v$.

A	330				
B	156				
r	156	18	12	6	0
a	330	156	18	12	6
b	156	18	12	6	0
u	1	0	1	-8	9
v	0	1	-2	17	-19
s	0	1	-8	9	26
t	1	-2	17	-19	-55

Proof. $\gcd = 6 = 330 \cdot 9 + 156 \cdot (-19)$ \square